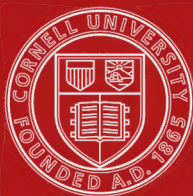


A CONCISE GRAMMAR
OF THE
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

LEONARD A. MAGNUS





Cornell University Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

Cornell University Library
PG 2111.M19

Concise grammar of the Russian language.



3 1924 026 616 387

olin

A CONCISE GRAMMAR
OF THE
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

A CONCISE GRAMMAR OF THE RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

BY

LEONARD A. MMAGNUS, LL.B.

*Editor and translator of the "Armament of Igor,"
"Russian Folk Tales," &c.*

4

LONDON

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

1916
M
R

A. 427.796

LONDON :

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Preface	xvii
Introduction	xix
Alphabet	xxi
Russian Script and Italic	xxiii
Specimen of Handwriting	xxiv
§ 1. The Use and Value of the Letters	1
§ 2. The Vowels—	
(1) Hard and Soft Vowels	2
(2) а and я	2
(3) э, е and ѣ	3
(4) и, ѳ, і, ѵ	3
(5) о and ѳ	4
(6) у and ю	5
(7) ъ and ѣ	5
§ 3. The Consonants—Voiced and Unvoiced	6
§ 4. General Observations on the Consonants	6
§ 5. The Hard and Soft Consonants.—Preliminary	8
(1) The Labials п, б, м, в, ф, ѳ	8
(2) The Dentals т, д, н	9
(3) The Gutturals к, г, х	10
(4) The Sibilants and Compound Conso- nants с, з, ш, ж, щ, ц, ч	11
(5) The Liquids л and р	13
§ 6. Conglomerated Consonants when Final	14
§ 7. Transliteration into Russian	14
§ 8. Russian Diphthongs	15
§ 9. The Change of е to ѳ	16

ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. The Parts of Speech	19
-------------------------------------	----

THE NOUN.

§ 11. Preliminary Observations.—The Genders	20
§ 12. The Declensions	21

	PAGE
§ 13. The Cases	22
§ 14. The Numbers	23
§ 15. Hard and Soft Nouns	24
§ 16. The First Declension—Mascu-	25
§ 17. The First Declension—Neuters	26
§ 18. The Second Declension in а and я	28
§ 19. The Third Declension in и and мя—Mascu- lines of the Third Declension—путь	30
§ 20. Feminines of the Third Declension	30
§ 21. Neuters in мя of the Third Declension	32
§ 22. Remains of Older Forms in the Third Declension— (1) мать, дочь	32
(2) дитѣ	33
§ 23. Discussion of the Nouns	33
§ 24. Remarks on the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension— (1) Genitive and locative singular in “у” The “у” declension	34
(2) Plurals in -ья	35
(3) Plurals in -ѧ	36
(4) Genitive plural in -ѣ	37
(5) Nominative singular in -инѣ	38
(6) Irregular formations	39
§ 25. Accentuation of the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension	39
§ 26. Remarks on the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension— (1) Genitive plural in -ѣ and -ей	41
(2) Neuters in -іе and feminines in -ія	42
(3) Mixed masculine and neuter declension —nouns in -іще, -ко and others	43
(4) Plurals in -ья	43
(5) Irregular forms— (а) Obsolete, небо, чудо, -ята	44
(β) Duals	45

§ 27.	Accentuation of the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension	45
§ 28.	Remarks on the Second Declension—	
	(1) Genitive plural in -ъ and -ей	46
	(2) Contraction of -ою, -ею to -оѹ, -еѹ	47
	(3) Masculine nouns in second declension	47
	(4) Nouns in -іѧ	47
§ 29.	Accentuation of Second Declension	47
§ 30.	Remarks on the Third Declension	49
§ 31.	Accentuation of the Third Declension	49
§ 32.	The “Euphonic” Vowels о, е and ѣ—	
	I. Extrusion of ѣ and ѣ when unaccented	50
	II. Insertion of о and е for euphony	52
	III. What heavy final consonants are allowed	54
	IV. Remarks on the third declension	55

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33.	Preliminary Observations—	
	(1) The syntactical importance of the adjective	55
	(2) The use of possessive and descriptive adjectives	56
	(3) No distinction of gender in the plural	56
	(4) The predicative adjective	56
	(5) The determinative and simple adjective	56
	(6) The accentuation of the adjective	58
	(7) No third declension adjectives	58
	(8) The unnecessary grammarians’ spellings in the determinatives	58
	(9) The substantival use of adjectives	58
§ 34.	The Simple, Possessive and Descriptive Adjectives—	
	(1) Examples of simple adjectives	58
	(2) Formation of possessive adjectives and examples	59
	(3) Formation of descriptive adjectives	61

	PAGE
§ 35. The Determinative Adjectives—	
(1) The scheme and formation	62
(2) Examples	64
§ 36. The Formation of the Predicatives—	
(1) Where no corresponding predicative exists	68
(2) Where no corresponding determinative exists	68
(3) Possessives	68
(4) Instances of accentuation of predicatives	68
§ 37. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Formation—	
(1) Comparative and superlative, how formed	70
(2) The superlative	70
(3) Substitutes for the superlative	71
§ 38. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Rules—	
I. Use of the uninflected form	72
II. The four simple inflected superlatives	73
III. Adjectives with no determinative comparative	73
IV. Use of prefix <i>no</i> with indeclinable comparative	73
V. Translation of “than”	74
§ 39. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Examples—	
I. The regular form <i>-ѣе</i> , <i>-ѣіііііі</i> , and accentuation	74
II. The shorter form <i>-ѣе</i> , <i>-ѣіііі</i>	74
III. Comparison with words from different roots	77

THE PRONOUN.

§ 40. (1) Preliminary observations	77
(2) Table of Russian pronouns and adverbs	78-9

§ 41.	Examples of the Pronouns—	
	I. The interrogative pronouns . . .	80
	Remarks on кой, чей, который, сколько	81
	II. The relatives кто, который . . .	81
	III. The demonstratives тотъ, этотъ, оный, сей; remarks on the use of them . . .	82
	IV. The universals каждый, весь, всякій .	83
	V. The personal pronouns and possessives	84
	(1) Use of свой and себя, ся . . .	85
	(2) Use of ея, etc., with preposi- tions.	85
	(3) Instrumental fem. sing. in -ой	86
	(4) When personal pronouns are used	86
	VI. The indefinite pronouns	86
	VII. The negative pronouns. The double negative in Russian	87
	VIII. The pronouns of identity, and самъ and самыи	87
	IX. The pronouns of difference, другой, иной, прочие	88

THE VERB.

§ 42.	(1) Table of Russian Verbs	89
	(2) Preliminary observations—	
	(i) The parts of the Russian verb.	90
	(ii) The deficiencies of the Russian verb and the aspects	91
	(iii) How the parts are formed	92
	(iv) Verbs original and derivative	92
§ 43.	The Russian Infinitive — Consonantal and Vocalic	93
§ 44.	The forms derived from the Infinitive	94
§ 45.	The formations from the 1st person sing. Present	96
§ 46.	The laws of the accentuation of the verbs	96

	PAGE
§ 47. Paradigms of желѣть and вѣрнѣть	98
§ 48. The Four Conjugations.—Some Phonetic Rules	99
§ 49. The First Conjugation. The Present forms —	
I. Guttural roots, infinitives in -чь	100
II. Nasal roots, infinitives in -ять; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т	101
III. Sibilant roots, infinitives in -сти́, -сть	103
IV. Liquid roots. (1) Infinitives in -есть, -есть; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т	104
(2) Infinitives in -ороть, -олоть	104
V. Dental roots, infinitives in -сти́, -сть	105
идти́, честь, съѣсть	106
Accentuation of past tense	107
VI. Roots in в, жить, плыть, слыть	107
VII. Consonantal roots with suffixal а in infinitive	108
§ 50. The Second Conjugation in -нуть. Preliminary.	
I. "Instantaneous" verbs and their accentuation	109
II. "Inchoative" verbs and their accentuation	110
III. Examples of conjugation	111
§ 51. The Third Conjugation.—Preliminary	112
§ 52. The Original Verbs of the Third Conjugation.	
I. Those in which termination is directly to root—	
(1) Liquid roots, олоть, ороть	112
(2) Vocalic roots (а) in "а" знать, сіять	113
(β) Roots in и, битъ, etc., past part. pass. in т	113
(γ) Roots in у, дуть, past part. pass. in т	113
(δ) Roots in ѣ, смѣть	113
(ε) Verbs in быть and нѣтъ, past part. pass. in т	114
II. Verbs with suffixal infinitive in -ать, -ять, and accentuation	115
слатъ, стлатъ, дыхѣть, etc.	116

	PAGE
§ 53. Derivative Verbs of the Third Conjugation—	
(1) From nouns in -ать, -ять	116
(2) Inceptives in -ѣть	116
Accentuation of them	117
(3) I. Derivatives in -овать, and accentua- tion. Derivatives in -ировать, and accentuation	117
II. Original verbs in -овать, -евать	118
(4) Iteratives in -ать, -ять	119
(5) Iteratives in -ивать, -ивать	119
давать, ставать, знавать	120
§ 54. The Fourth Conjugation. Preliminary —	
Infin. in -ѣть, -ить	120
§ 55. The Fourth Conjugation. Original Verbs—	
I. In -ать, -ять, гнать, стоять, спать	121
II. In -ѣть, -ать, and accentuation	122
Past tense in -ѣль	123
хотѣть, бѣжать	123
Accentuation of original verbs in -ить	124
§ 56. The Fourth Conjugation. Derivative Verbs.	
Accentuation and origins	125
§ 57. Anomalous Verbs—	
I. Mixed conjugations. The same root throughout. ревъѣть, хотѣть, -дѣть, стать, посѣтитъ, обратитъ, -шибѣть	126
II. Using different roots. идти, быть (and its compounds), ѣхать	127
III. Obsolete forms. здать, verbs in “м,” вѣмъ, есмь, ѣсть, дать	128
§ 58. The Aspects of the Verbs. Preliminary	130
Perfective—Imperfective—Abstract—Itera- tive — Instantaneous — Causative — In- ceptive	131
Verbs having no perfective	132

	PAGE
§ 59. The Formation of the Aspects—	
I. (1) From original verbs	133
Monosyllabic roots. Those naturally	
perfective	133
Iteratives in -áть, -вáть	134
When compounded	134
-честь and -читáть	135
(2) Second conjugation in -нуть	135
The “instantaneous” aspect	135
(3) Third conjugation. Prepositions	
to form perfective	135
Iteratives in -ывать, -áть	136
двѣгать, двигáть, etc.	137
(4) Fourth conjugation. Original verbs	
in -ить, -ѣть. Imperfective in -áть.	
Abstract forms in -áть, -áть, -íть.	137
When compounded, abstract is	
imperfective	138
Iterative forms in -áть, -áть	139
Iteratives in -ивать, -ивать	140
II. The formation of perfective of derivative	
verbs	140
With prepositions	140
III. Aspects formed from a different root.	
Perfective and imperfective, concrete	
and abstract	141
IV. The aspects of compounded verbs in -ить,	
-áть, -áть, -нуть, -ивать	142
V. Causatives and inceptives in -ить and -ѣть	145
VI. Ho and за as forming depreciatory, or	
diminutive, and inceptive aspects	146
§ 60. Reflexive and Passive Verbs—другъ другá	147

THE NUMERALS.

PAGE

§ 61.	Preliminary	149
§ 62.	I. The numerals 1-10	150
	Declension of <i>о́ба</i>	152
	II. The numerals 11-90	152
	III. The numerals 100-1,000,000. <i>сто</i>	153
	The compound numerals.— <i>ты́сяча</i>	154
	IV. Notes—	
	(1) Frequency	155
	(2) Distributives	155
	(3) Nought	155
	(4) Noun governed by last numeral	155
	(5) Decimals	156
	(6) Compound ordinals and examples	156
	(7) Declension of <i>два</i> with nouns— <i>дво́и</i> , etc.	157
	(8) Fractions— <i>полови́на</i> , <i>полтора́</i> ; <i>пол-</i> <i>compounds</i>	158
	(9) Dates— <i>годъ</i> and <i>лѣто</i>	160
§ 63.	THE ADVERBS	160
§ 64.	THE PREPOSITIONS	161
§ 65.	THE CONJUNCTIONS	161
§ 66.	THE INTERJECTIONS	161

SYNTAX.

§ 67.	Preliminary—Concord—Order of Words— Predominance of Adjective	162
§ 68.	The Article	163
§ 69.	The Cases—	
	I. Nominative	163
	II. Vocative	164
	III. Accusative as object	164
	Special uses: <i>duration</i>	165

	PAGE
IV. Genitive	165
(i) Ownership — Possessive adjectives — Subjective genitive and objective always follows	166
(ii) Partitive	170
(iii) In impersonal sentences.	171
(iv) Replaced by dative	171
(v) After comparatives	172
(vi) Objective case	172
(vii) After certain adjectives and verbs	172
(viii) Dates	173
(ix) Partitive sense	173
(x) Descriptive	173
V. The Dative	174
VI. Instrumental	175
(1) Agent	175
(2) Means	175
(3) Predicative	176
(4) Manner	176
(5) Measurement	176
(6) Words of quality	177
(7) Time	177
(8) After certain verbs	177
VII. The Locative.	177
§ 70. Table of Prepositions and Particles	178-9
§ 71. The Prepositions and Particles.—Preliminary	180
§ 72. The Prepositions governing only the Accusative	181
§ 73 (1). The Prepositions governing only the Genitive	182
§ 73 (2). The Prepositions governing only the Dative	187
§ 74. The Prepositions governing only the Instrumental and между	188
§ 75. The Prepositions governing only the Locative	189
§ 76. The Prepositions подъ, предъ and за	189
§ 77. The Prepositions въ, о and на	193
§ 78. The Prepositions по and съ.	198
§ 79. The Verbal Prefixes воз, вы, пере, пре, разъ	201
§ 80. The Accentuation of Prepositions and Particles	204

§ 81.	The Numerals—	
	I. The date, days, months, etc.	206
	II. Age	208
	III. Adjectives compounded with numerals	209
	IV. The time of day	209
	V. Fractions	210
	VI. Russian money	212
	VII. Frequencies	212
	VIII. One cardinal now obsolete	213
	IX. Cards	213
§ 82.	The Pronouns—	
	I. Interrogative	214
	II. Relative	214
	III. Indefinite pronouns. Use of <i>он</i>	215
	IV. The reciprocal pronouns	216
	V. The negative pronouns	217
§ 83.	The Russian Appellatives—	
	I. In conversation — <i>вы, ты, баринъ</i> , patronymics.	218
	II. Between masters and servants	220
	III. Addressing meetings	221
	IV. Titles	221
	V. Addressing letters	223
§ 84.	Interrogative sentences — <i>ли, развѣ</i>	225
§ 85.	Negative sentences	225
§ 86.	The Verb “to be,” omission of “copula”	228
§ 87.	The Verb “to have”	230
§ 88.	Special use of Infinitive	231
§ 89.	The Gerundives and Participles—	
	I. The gerundives	232
	II. The participles — past and present. -мый = -ble.	232
§ 90.	Subordinate Clauses—	
	I. Temporal	234
	II. Causal	235
	III. Conditional	235
	IV. Final. (1) Purpose. (2) Effect	237
	V. Reported Speech	238

	PAGE
§ 91. The Imperative. Full forms	241
Adverbial, Preterite and Conditional uses— пошелъ	241
§ 92. Further illustrations of the Aspects	243
§ 93. The Auxiliaries	247
давно́, бу́ду, ста́ну, бу́дто	247
то́лько что, бы́вало	248
бы́ло, the future perfect	249
§ 94. The Impersonal Construction—	
I. Impersonal verbs	249
II. Translation of “one” (says)	250
III. Impersonal construction of active verbs	250
§ 95. Apocopated forms of some Verbs	250
§ 96. The Reflexive Verbs	251
Passives, Causatives, Deponents, “Middle” Voice	252
§ 97. Russian Relationships	253
Table of Kinship	258
Table of Affinity	259
ETYMOLOGY.—Preliminary.—Accentuation	260
§ 98. The Nouns—	
I. Foreign terminations in common use	260
II. Disused or dead suffixes	261
III. Patronymics	262
IV. Termination to denote the feminine	262
V. Abstract nouns	262
VI. Verbal nouns	263
VII. The agent or implement	264
VIII. Diminutives—	
(1) Masculines of first declension	265
(2) Neuters of first declension	265
(3) Feminines and masculines of second declension	266
IX. Augmentatives	267
X. Miscellaneous	267
§ 99. Adjectival Suffixes	268
§ 100. Verbal Formations	270

PREFACE.

THE Russian language is becoming daily of increasing importance, both commercially and literarily. It is used over nearly one-seventh of the world, from Petrograd to Vladivostók and in the other Slav States. The literature, popular and cultivated, technical and scientific, published in Russia, must claim the attention of students to the same degree as German has done in the past.

The greatest puzzle in Russian is the accentuation, which governs the pronunciation and inflection, and seems utterly arbitrary. To a large extent it can be scientifically and simply explained, and to this feature the author has devoted especial care.

The difficulties of the language cannot be denied ; but they have been accentuated by two accidents : first, that all grammars were constructed on a plan merely imitative of Latin ; secondly, that they mostly came from Germany, and were framed in accordance with the requirements of the German mind.

It is with the ambition of writing a book on Russian grammar that shall translate Russian into English idiom, and shall proceed on lines more consonant with the genius of Slav speech, that this book has been attempted.

The author wishes to express his obligations to many friends, English and Russian, who have rendered him invaluable assistance, and, in particular, to Mr. Mark Sieff and Mr. J. H. G. Grattan ; and to acknowledge his indebtedness to Berneker's Russian studies, and the essays of Professor Boyer (of the Sorbonne).

This grammar, whilst aiming at being practical, is based on historical and philological methods. Explanatory notes on apparent irregularities are added in smaller type, the principal rules being made prominent by italics or otherwise. This grammar should be used in conjunction with one of the progressive readers now being published in England.

L. A. M.

INTRODUCTION.

THE modern Russian language is spoken over the whole extent of the Russian Empire. It originated as the dialect of the Principality of Moscow and the Republic of Nówgorod, and thus at first embraced all the provinces or governments of Russia proper, except Volhynia, Podolia, Poltáva and Southern Russia (where a dialect called Little-Russian is spoken). In Minsk, Gródno and Vílna another dialect is spoken, called White-Russian.

Russian belongs to the Slavonic branch of the Aryan or Indo-European family of languages; other kindred tongues are Polish, Čech or Bohemian, Moravian, Serbian and Bulgarian.

The Slavonic peoples mostly belong to the Orthodox or Eastern Church. They received their alphabet, their civilisation and their ritual from Constantinople, and hence mostly use modernized or adapted forms of the Cyrillic alphabet, which was created by Saint Cyril and Saint Method in the ninth century on the basis of the Greek alphabet.

Those Slav peoples who belong to the Roman confession use the Latin or Roman alphabet, as we do;

but, to provide symbols for the many sounds, very numerous diacritical marks have had to be added, e.g. а, е, ё, ё́, ё́, ё́, ё́, ё́, ё́, ё́, etc. The Cyrillic alphabet was invented expressly for the Slavonic languages ; and, though the signs are at first strange, they express the sounds more accurately, and, in reality, aid the learner considerably.

The first task of the student of Russian is to familiarise himself with the alphabet, *both* printed and written, so that he may read and write it with ease and promptitude.

In English the vowels a, e, i, o, u have, since Shakespeare's time, been grotesquely diverted from their original value and the general Continental use. The reader must understand that in this Grammar a, e, i, o, u are used as in Italian or German : i.e. ah, cortège, pique, poke, rule ; except where specially stated otherwise.

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

The Russian Alphabet consists of thirty-six letters. Of these there are twelve vowels, а, е, и, і, ѳ, о, у, ѱ, Ѵ, э, ю, я; twenty-one consonants, б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ; one semi-vowel, ѱ (і *krátkoyi*); and two letters which have no sound-value of their own, ѳ, ѵ—they influence the softening or hardening of the consonant immediately preceding them.

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps. Ord.	Caps. Ord.			
А а	А а	а (as in <i>ah</i>)	а (<i>father</i>)	а
Б б	Б б	бе (like English <i>bay</i>)	б	б
В в	В в	ве (as in Eng. <i>vale</i>)	в	в
Г г	Г г	ге (like English <i>gay</i>)	г*	г
Д д	Д д	де (like English <i>day</i>)	д	д
Е е	Е е	је (like English <i>yea</i>)	је	е or ye
Ж ж	Ж ж	же (like French <i>gai</i>)	ѳ (like <i>s in leisure</i>)	ѳ
З з	З з	зе (like English <i>zay</i>)	з	з
И и	И и	і (like English 'e)	і (as in <i>prique</i>)	і
І ѳ	І ѳ	и <i>крáткое</i> (і <i>krátkoyi</i>)	ѳ (as in <i>yet</i>)	ѳ
І ѳ	І ѳ	и <i>съ тóчкой</i> (і <i>stóčkoy</i>)	і (as in <i>prique</i>)	і
К к	К к	ка (like English <i>kah</i>)	к	к
Л л	Л л	елл	л	л

* Always "hard" as in *Give*.

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps. Ord.	Caps. Ord.			
M m	<i>M</i> m	em	m	m
H n	<i>H</i> n	en	n	n
O o	<i>O</i> o	o (as in <i>stock</i>)	o	o
H n	<i>H</i> n	pe (as in <i>pay</i>)	p	p
P p	<i>P</i> p	err (as in <i>Scotch air</i>)	r	r
C c	<i>C</i> c	ess	s	s
T t	<i>T</i> m	te (as in <i>tay</i>)	t	t
Y y	<i>Y</i> y	u (as in <i>rule</i>)	u	u
Φ φ	<i>Φ</i> φ	eff	f	f
X x	<i>X</i> r	khah	{ch in <i>loch</i> or German <i>ch</i> }	kh
Ц ц	<i>Ц</i> ц	tse (as in <i>tsay</i>)	ts	ts
Ч ч	<i>Ч</i> ч	če (as in <i>chaste</i>)	English <i>ch</i>	č
Ш ш	<i>Ш</i> ш	ša (as in <i>shah</i>)	English <i>sh</i>	š
Щ щ	<i>Щ</i> щ	šča	{šč rapidly {combined*}}	šč
Ъ ъ	<i>Ъ</i> ъ	yerr (ерь)	mute	—
Ы ы	<i>Ы</i> ы	yery (еры)	{y like i in <i>swim</i> }	y ^u
Ь ь	<i>Ь</i> ь	yerī (ері)	mute	—
Ѣ ѣ	<i>Ѣ</i> ѣ	yatī (яті)	{like Russian e}	ě ^u
Ѥ ѥ	<i>Ѥ</i> ѥ	e (like English <i>ě</i>)	{like ě in <i>ell</i> }	e ^a
Ю ю	<i>Ю</i> ю	yu (like English <i>you</i>)	yu	yu
Я я	<i>Я</i> я	ya (like English <i>yah!</i>)	ya	ya
Ѧ ѧ	<i>Ѧ</i> ѧ	fitá	f	
Ѩ ѩ	<i>Ѩ</i> ѩ	ízitsa	like u	

* Sounded like shch in *freshcheese*.

RUSSIAN SCRIPT AND ITALIC.

Cursive.		Italic.		Cursive.		Italic.	
А	а	А	а	Б	б	Б	б
В	в	В	в	Г	г	Г	г
Д	д	Д	д	Е	е	Е	е
Ж	ж	Ж	ж	З	з	З	з
И	и	И	и	Й	й	Й	й
К	к	К	к	Л	л	Л	л
М	м	М	м	Н	н	Н	н
О	о	О	о	П	п	П	п
Р	р	Р	р	С	с	С	с
Т	т	Т	т	У	у	У	у
Ф	ф	Ф	ф	Х	х	Х	х
Ц	ц	Ц	ц	Ч	ч	Ч	ч
Ш	ш	Ш	ш	Щ	щ	Щ	щ
Ъ	ъ	Ъ	ъ	Ы	ы	Ы	ы
Ь	ь	Ь	ь	Э	э	Э	э
Ю	ю	Ю	ю	Я	я	Я	я
Ѧ	ѧ	Ѧ	ѧ	Ѩ	ѩ	Ѩ	ѩ
Ѫ	ѫ	Ѫ	ѫ	Ѭ	ѭ	Ѭ	ѭ
Ѯ	ѯ	Ѯ	ѯ	Ѳ	ѳ	Ѳ	ѳ
Ѵ	ѵ	Ѵ	ѵ	Ѷ	ѷ	Ѷ	ѷ

SPECIMEN OF HANDWRITING.

Въ минуту жизни трудную
 Тьснитесь-ль въ сердце грусть
 Одну молитву чудную
 Твержу я наизусть

Есть сила благодатная
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ
 И дышетъ непонятная
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ
 Съ душой какъ бремя скатится
 Сомнѣнье далеко
 И върится и плачется
 И такъ легко, легко

66.

ITALIC.

Въ минуту жизни трудную
 Тьснитесь-ль въ сердце грусть
 Одну молитву чудную
 Твержу я наизусть

Есть сила благодѣтельная
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ
 И дышетъ непонятная
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ
 Съ душой какъ бремя скатится
 Сомнѣнье далеко
 И върится и плачется
 И такъ легко, легко.

(Термонтовъ.)

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.

THE ALPHABET.

PARTICULAR attention is drawn to *ó, g, ð, u, n, u, n, c, m, u*; letters which often occasion the learner difficulty. To distinguish *m* and *u* in loose writing, a line is often used above and below, e.g. *m̄, ū*.

Remember in all transliterations *a, e, i, o, u* should be sounded as in *father, cortège* (*or été*, v. footnote, p. 3), *pique, Tom, rule*.

§ 1. THE USE AND VALUE OF THE LETTERS.

The Russian language is nearly phonetic, but has kept a number of letters that have lost their separate values, e.g. *i, h, v, ø*; and further, like English, has a strong tonic accent, which tends to slur the preceding and following syllables.

e.g. *Wólverhampton, indúbitably, my lórd, láboratory, Súdáy, désultoriness.*

In such English words the vowels all become merged in the atonic vowel, phonetically written *ə* (e.g. *a* in "villa"), and in Russian a similar phenomenon obtains.

But the Russian alphabet, *with these reservations*, has symbols assigned to every separate sound, and thus is nearly phonetic.

The Russian tonic accent is very hard to acquire, and can only be learnt by practice. A few hints can be given here and there. *In this Grammar it is marked throughout*, as in all dictionaries.

§ 2. THE VOWELS.

(1) Russian has no less than fifteen symbols for vowels. They are partly survivals of an older stage of the language.

They are divided into "hard" and "soft," i.e. simple, or preceded by the consonant *y*. This distinction affects the grammar and pronunciation of every word, and the following table must be committed to memory:—

<i>Hard</i> :	<i>a</i>	<i>э</i>	<i>ы</i>	<i>о</i>	<i>у</i>	(<i>ъ</i>)
<i>Soft</i> :	<i>я</i>	<i>е, ё</i>	<i>и, ъ</i>	<i>і, ѳ</i>	<i>ё</i>	<i>ю, ѵ</i>

(2) *a accented** is sounded like *a* in "father," but somewhat shorter.
Pronunciation of *a* and *я*. e.g. б́аба woman

a unaccented is sounded like *a* in "villa." e.g. ба́ба.

The familiar phonetic symbol for this sound is *ə*, the *atonic* vowel. Thus ба́ба is sounded "bábə."

Unaccented *a* is sounded like the Russian *e* after ж, ч, ш, щ. [v. § 5 (4).]

я accented is sounded *ya*. e.g. я I.

я unaccented is sounded *yě* or *yi* or *i*.

e.g. Ба́ба-яга́ (Bábo-yigá), the name of the Russian witch; лю́бятъ (lyúbit) they love.

In one instance *я* is sounded *a* in the reflexive suffix *ся* (*sa*). [v. § 41, V. (1).]

я (*ya*) also represents the Old Slav *nasal vowel* *ę* (sounded like French *in* in "brin"). This historical fact explains such verbal forms as жать, жну, жну, root *žnъ, žnъ*, and nouns in -*ня*, e.g. пламя, пламени flame. [v. § 21 and § 49, II.] Polish conserves the Old Slav *nasals ę* and *ę*, e.g. sędzić, Russian сýдить (súd'it') to judge.

* "Accented" means emphasised, stressed. There are no written accents in Russian, except in elementary grammars and texts.

(3) э is used in foreign words adapted to Russian, but in no pure Russian words except
 Pronunciation of э, е, ѣ. *это́ръ* (étot) this. It is sounded like the French è in “trève,” or the English *ai* in “hair,” but shorter. It is only used in transliteration of foreign *e*-sounds.

e.g. Эмденъ Emden, поётъ (po-ét) poet, Эйзъ Aisne

е and ѣ *now* represent the same sound, namely *yě*. In older Russian ѣ had a separate value, varying between *yě* and *ya*.*

e.g. Екатерина (Yekaterína) Catherine
 ѣмъ (yem) I eat

е is used:—

(i) When it represents *ě* [v. § 2 (5) and § 9].

(ii) When it is inserted to avoid heavy consonants and represents *ь* [v. § 2 (7) and § 32]; e.g. весь, вся (veś, fsya) all.

When unaccented it becomes a faint *yě* or *i* sound.

e.g. поле (pólyč) field сине́е (sínyěyě) blue

The pronouns *одинъ* and *одинъ́*, *о́нъ* masc., *о́на* fem. and neuter, are both sounded *одинъ́*, *о́нъ́* (adní, aní).

(4) The sound-value of *ы* is best understood as a rapid combination of German *ü* with *i*,
 Pronunciation of ы and и. *üi*; or, it may be got by placing the tongue in the *и* position, the lips in the *i* position. *Roughly*, it may be produced by sounding the English word *bin* deep in the throat.

No word can ever begin with the vowel ы.

* The sound “ye” (е and ѣ) is open [yè] or close [yé] according as the following consonant is “hard” or “soft.”

и is the pure *i*-sound, produced with elongation of the lips, as in French or German.

і (**и съ точкою** = with a dot) is the same, but only used *before* other vowels (e.g. **мнѣніе** [mněnie] opinion), except in one word, **міръ** the world.

When **и** is used in diphthongs or reduced to the consonantal value of *y* in “yet,” it is written **ѣ** and called **и краткое** (**и** short).

e.g. **стаѣ** (stāi) flock

ѵ (**ѵжица**) is equivalent to **и**, and only used to represent the Greek *υ* in a few Church words.

Note.—**міръ** world, **миръ** peace, **мыръ** myrrh, **сѣнодъ** synod, and **Владѣміръ** Vladímir (and similar names, e.g. **Казѣміръ**).

(5) **о** *accented* is sounded like the German short *o* in Pronunciation “Gott,” and can be imitated by *shortening* of **о** and **ѳ**. the English vowel-sound *au* (e.g. cough).

e.g. **рогъ** horn

о *unaccented* is sounded *a* or *ə*.

e.g. хорошó	(khərǝšó)	fine
порá	(pará)	time
слóво	(slóvə)	word

ѳ is sounded *yó*, i.e. *o* with a *yod*-sound. It *only occurs in accented syllables*, and *in writing is not distinguished* from **е**, except in elementary books. Rules are given in § 9 for the change from **е** to **ѳ**.

e.g. ружьѳ	(ružó)	gun
несѳте	(nisyóte)	ye carry
жѳны	(žóny)	the wives
ѳлушка	(yóluškə)	fir-tree
ѳлоука		

(6) *y* is sounded like *u* in “rule” or “pull”; *ю* is sounded like *u* in “universe,” but shorter.
 Pronunciation of *y* and *ю*.

e.g. юбилéй (yubiléy) jubilee
 несú (nisú) I carry

(7) *ъ* and *ь* are mute in modern Russian. The former indicates the hardness of a consonant; the latter the softness, i.e. the absence or presence of a *yod* element.

e.g. былъ (byl) he was вязъ (vyas) elm
 былъ (byl') a tale вязъ (vyas') bond

But in older Russian *ъ* had a value something like the *u* in “nut,” and *ь* a soft short *i*-sound.

Hence the differences in conjugation and declension between родъ, рѣда (родъ generation), and ротъ, рѣа (ротъ mouth), терѣтъ to rub, тры I rub.

This is because in all open syllables (i.e. ending in a vowel) *ъ* and *ь* became mute; in all closed syllables (i.e. ending in a consonant) *ъ* and *ь* disappeared when unaccented, or became *o* and *e* when accented. E.g. дѣно́, дѣнѣ́ (the bottom), now дно, донѣ́; рѣтъ́, рѣта́ (the mouth), now ротъ, рта; дѣнѣ́, дѣня́ (day), now день, дня [d'nyá].

Obviously then *ъ* and *ь* can only occur *medially* (in compounds) and *finally*.

Further, theoretically no Russian word ends in a consonant; the mute vowel is always added, even in foreign words.

e.g. Лондо́нъ London Брю́ссель Brussels

Latterly, there is a tendency to discard final *ъ*, when it is merely orthographical.

§ 3. THE CONSONANTS—VOICED AND UNVOICED.

The consonants must first be divided into *unvoiced* and *voiced* (e.g. in English *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*).

We then have :—

	<i>Labials.</i>	<i>Dentals.</i>	<i>Gutturals.</i>
Mutes unvoiced :	п	т	к
„ voiced :	б	д	г
Nasals :	м	н	—
Spirants unvoiced :	ф θ	—	х
„ voiced :	в	—	—

The remainder must be separately classed :—

	<i>Sibilants.</i>		<i>Compound consonants.</i>	
Unvoiced :	с	ш	ч	ц, щ
Voiced :	з	ж	дж	—

Liquids : л and р.

§ 4. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONSONANTS.

(1) There is no nasal guttural in Russian, like the English *ng*.

e.g. жѣнка (žón-ka) little woman (нк as in *pancake*)

(2) When б, д, г, в, з, and ж are *final* consonants, they are sounded like п, т, к, ф, с, and ш.

e.g. рабъ	(rap)	slave
дѣдъ	(d'ët)	grandfather
рогъ	(rok)	horn
островъ	(óstrɔf)	island
ложъ	(loš)	lie
розъ	(ros)	of the roses

(3) When in compounds **т** precedes **д**, the first **т** is assimilated to **д**.

e.g. **отдать** (ad-dát') to give up

(4) When in the same syllable **з** precedes **ж**, or **с** precedes **ш**, the combination is sounded like **жж**, and **шш**.

e.g. **позже** (požži) later
высший (vyšši) highest

(5) **ф** is scarcely found in original Russian words; **ө** is almost disused, and has the same phonetic value, just as *ph* in "phonetic" has the same sound as *f* in "fine."

(6) When **к** and **г** precede **т** in the same syllable, they are commonly sounded as **х** (kh).

e.g. **но́гтя** (nókhtya) of the nail
кто (khtǒ) who

(7) Other instances of assimilation (*these constitute rules*):—

бúдто	(búttǒ)	as if
сдѣ́лать	(zděłǎt')	to do
отъ зарí	(adzarí)	from the dawn
прóсьба	(próz'bǎ)	request
сча́стье	(ščíst'e)	happiness
извóзчикъ	(izvóščik)	driver
что	(štǒ)	what
мя́гкій	(myákhki)	soft
лѣ́гче	(lékhče)	easier

Generally speaking the subsequent letter, voiced or unvoiced, attracts and assimilates the preceding.

(8) ч before п is sounded ш.

e.g. скýчно (skúšno) weary

(9) All consonants are sounded, *except* л and т in -злн-, -стн-; л in солнце (sóntsi) sun; ъ final after labials.

e.g. пóзднѣй	(pózni)	late
влáстнѣй	(vlásny)	powerful
рýбль	(rup')	rouble
мысль	(mýs')	thought

§ 5. THE "HARD" AND "SOFT" CONSONANTS.

Preliminary.

The vowels have already been divided into two sets *hard* and *soft*, i.e. plain and ioticised, viz.:—

<i>Hard</i> :	а	э	ы	о	у	ъ
<i>Soft</i> :	я	е ѣ	и і	ё	ю	ь

Some consonants can be combined with any of the vowels. *These consonants are either hard or soft according as the vowel following is hard or soft.*

Other consonants are *naturally* "hard" or "soft," and can *only* be used with certain vowels.

The strictest attention must be paid to these rules; as they explain the inflections, and dispose of most of the apparent exceptions.

(1) *The Labials.*

The labials п, б, м, в can *all* be either "hard" or "soft," and can be used with *any* of the vowels.

But note that л is inserted after п, б, м, and в in

all "soft" nominal forms and in all verbal forms before ю and е.

e.g. ловѢТЬ	(lavít')	to catch
ловлЮ	(lavlyú)	catch
торговѢТЬ	(tərgəvát')	to trade
торговлЯ	(tərgóvlya)	trade

Otherwise п, б, в, ф, в are sounded like English p, b, m, f, v, *subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2).*

(2) *The Dentals.*

The dentals can be used with *any* of the vowels. But they modify their pronunciation, and are changed in derivatives and verbal forms into palatals when "soft."

т, д and н "hard" are sounded as in English.

ть and дь are sounded midway between t and č, something like the cockney "don't-yer know?" "did-you?"

нь is sounded *mouillé* like Spanish ñ, French and Italian *gn*.

These sounds are here denoted *t'*, *d'* and *ń*.

Thus we have :—

Hard : та [тэ] ты то ту ть

Soft : тя те ти тө тю ть, sounded t'a, t'e, etc.

Soft derivatives : че чу

e.g. платѢТЬ	(plat'ít')	to pay
плачѹ	(plačú)	I pay
молотѢТЬ	(mələt'ít')	to thrash
молочѹ	(mələčú)	I thrash
молотѢТЬ	(mələt'ít')	they thrash

Under identical conditions **д** changes to **ж**.

e.g. стыдѣ́ться (stydítsa) to be ashamed
 стыдѣ́тся (stydyátsa) they are ashamed
but стыжѹ́сь (styžús') I am ashamed

Russian, however, has some Church Slavonic derivatives, in which under these same conditions **т** became **ш**, and **д**, **жд**.

e.g. предѣ́ (přet) before (preposition)
 прѣ́жде (přéždi) before (adverb)
 слад-кѣ́и (slátki) sweet, сла́ще (slášče) sweeter
 родѣ́ть (rad'ít') to bear, рождѣ́ть (raždát')

(3) *The Gutturals.*

The gutturals **к**, **г**, **х** are in Russian words *never* combined with **я**, **э**, **ы**, **ѣ**, **ю**, **ь**.

In Old Russian, before these vowels, they were regularly changed in *all* nominal and verbal inflections and in all derivatives to **ц** and **ч**, **ж** and **ш** or **с** respectively. In modern Russian these changes only take place in verbs and derivatives.

The series of hard and soft gutturals is as follows:—

Hard: ка ко ку кѣ
Soft: ке ки
Soft Derivatives: ча че чи чо or чѣ чү
 or ци цю

Similarly with **г** and **х**; but **г** changes to **ж**, and **х** to **ш**.

Thus: га ге ги го гу гѣ
 Derivatives жа же жи жо or жѣ жу жѹ
 ха хе хи хо хү хѣ
 Derivatives ша ше ши шо or шѣ шү шѹ or шѣ

Thus in Russian the “hard” noun волкъ (volk) wolf, has a plural волки, but an adjective волчій.

Thus, too: —

Прага (Prága) Prague, has an adjective Пражскій
 Богъ (Bokh) God, Божество (Bažestvó) deity
 скакать (skakát') to leap, скачѹ (skačŭ) I leap (= кю)
 верхъ (vérkh) above, вершина (viršinə) the height

к is always like the English *k* except in cases noted in § 4 (6).

г is always like the English *g* in “got” or “give”: *except* (1) it is used to represent the foreign sound *h*, e.g. Голландія (Gollándiya) Holland; also in the Russian word Господь (Haspód') Lord. (2) It is sounded like a voiced *x* before dentals, e.g. тогда (takhdá) then; also in Богъ (God, and names of towns ending in буръ. (3) It is sounded в in the adjective gen. sing. termination -aro, -oro.

e.g. саморó	(səməvó)	of himself
дурнóго	(durnónə)	of the bad man
дóброго	(dóbrəvə)	of the good man

х is always sounded as in German *ach* or *ich*.

e.g. хата	(khata)	hut
хлѣвъ	(khíly).	feeble
сáхаръ	(sákhər)	sugar

(4) *The Sibilants and Compound Consonants.*

с, з, ш, ж, ч are *always* sounded like the consonants in the English words *sword*, *zeal*, *short*, *leisure*, *church*; subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2, 7, and 8).

с and з can be hard or soft and take any vowel. When “soft” they are sounded high on the palate, as though a sharp *i*-sound followed. They are here denoted as *ś* and *ź*.

ш is a combination of *ś* and *č*, which has to be practised.

ж, ш, and ц are always hard.

ч and щ always soft.

They can only be used with the following vowels:—

Hard: жа же жи жо or жё жу жь or жъ
 ша ше ши шё or шо шу шь or шъ
 ца це цы and ци цо цу цъ

ю, я, ы are never used after ж, ч or щ.

с and з in soft derivatives change to ш and ж, e.g. *здѣсь* (zd'ěś) hear, *близъ* (bliz) near, *здѣшній*, *близній*.

Soft: ча че чи чо or чё чу чъ
 ща ще щи що or щё шу шъ

However, though in modern Russian the three sibilants ш, ж, ч are accounted hard, in older Russian ш and ж were soft; and the same rules of pronunciation in unaccented syllables apply to ша, жа, ча and ща as to я, viz. the vowel-value changes from a to *i*, and not a to *u*.

e.g. часóвня	(česóvnya)	clock-tower
жарá	(zopa or žirá)	heat
шагá	(šegí)	steps

ц is always hard; it can, *unlike* any of the other sibilants, be followed by ы; and, *like* them, unaccented цо always becomes, and is written, це.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	
e.g. отѣцъ	отцѡмъ	the father
(at'éts)	(atsóm)	
нѣмецъ	нѣмцемъ	the German
(ně'mits)	(ně'mtsim)	

i.e. цо should have been spelt цѣ.

Accented: шо жѣ or жо чѣ or чо цо шѣ or шцо

Unaccented: ше же че це шце

(5) *The Liquids.*

л and р can be accompanied by any vowel.

The pronunciation of both лъ and љъ is quite different from that of the English *l*.

лъ* is a guttural-sounded *l* produced by raising the back of the tongue and contracting the air-passage: the front part of the tongue is drawn back and rounded, whilst the lips are rounded. It may be imitated by pronouncing the English word *pull* deep in the throat.

лъ is a palatal almost like the French *l* in "vil."

ръ is trilled, more like the Scotch *r*, рѣ is palatal with a faint *yod*-sound. These sounds can only be acquired by ear.

With regard to the liquids л and р two special rules of formation should be noted:—

In roots of the type градъ, городъ (grat, górat) town, the Church Slavonic had the monosyllabic form,

* In Polish written *ł*.

Russian the dissyllabic; and as the Church language has greatly influenced Russian, the modern language has examples of both.

e.g. злѣто, зѣлото (zlátŭ, zólotŭ) gold; странѣ (stráná) land; сторонѣ (stŏrŏná) side; хранѣть (khrańít') to preserve; хоронѣть (khŏrŏnít') to bury; гѣродь (gŏrŏt) city; but Петроградъ (Pitragrát) Petrograd; бѣрегъ (b'érek) coast; but прибрежье (přibréži) the foreshore; мѣлодь (mólod) young; млѣдше (mládši) younger.

§ 6. CONGLOMERATED CONSONANTS WHEN FINAL.

Russian dislikes a word ending in a conglomeration of consonants. Thus Egypt is Егѣпетъ (Yegípit), where етъ would in Old Russian have been written ѣтъ. [v. § 2 (6).]

Similarly, in neuter and feminine nouns, where the genitive plural is the root, e.g. дѣло, дѣлъ (d'ě'lo, d'ěl'), -етъ, deed, a vowel о, е or ѣ is sometimes inserted, especially when the last consonant is л or р.

e.g. сестрѣ, сѣстръ or сестѣръ (sistrá, syóstr or sistyór) sister; игрѣ (igrá) game, adjective игѣрный (igŏrny); свѣдьба (svád'ba) wedding, свѣдебъ (svádip); тѣтка (tyótka) aunt, тѣтокъ (tyótŏk); бѣсня (básnya) fable, бѣсенъ (básin); пѣлка (pá'lkŏ) stick, пѣлокъ (pá'ŏk).

§ 7. TRANSLITERATION INTO RUSSIAN.

The Russians, possessing their own special alphabet, have to transliterate foreign names and words. Within the limitations of their script they strive to be phonetic.

For *h* they use *r*.

e.g. Гѣмбуръ Hamburg.

For the English *th* they substitute *т*.

e.g. Smith Смитъ.

For German *eu*, *äu* they use *еü*.

e.g. Леихтенбергъ Leuchtenberg.

For the French *u*, German *ü*, they use *ю*.

e.g. Брюссель Brüssel (Brussels).

For the French *eu*, German *ö*, they use and write *ё*.

e.g. Гёте Goethe.

For the rest they try to represent sounds accurately.

e.g. джентльменъ gentleman, Брайтонъ Brighton,

комильфо comme il faut, Поанкарé Poincaré,

Тулонъ Toulon, Жанъ Jean, Динанъ Dinant,

Лувенъ Louvain, Бржежанъ Brzeźan.

All these foreign words, *if* they end in consonants or vowels that accord with Russian declensions, namely *ъ*, *ь*, *й*, *а*, *я*, *о* (neuter), *е* (neuter), are declined in the same way regularly.

e.g. Бюкономъ by Вассон, въ Лувенѣ in Louvain,
въ Динанѣ at Dinant (or Dinan). [v. § 23 (3).]

§ 8. RUSSIAN DIPHTHONGS.

Russian diphthongs are nearly all formed with *й*; and are *ай*, *яй*, sounded like *i* in "white," only broader; *еü* and *ёй* like *ey* in "grey," but longer; *ой*, *ёй* almost as English "boy"; and *уü*, *юй* like *ui* in "bruted."

The digraph *ay* denotes a true diphthong only in foreign words.

e.g. Брауншвейгъ Браунъ Braunschweig (Brunswick) Brown.

In Russian words (when found) the *a* and the *y* are separate vowels.

e.g. есаулъ a Cossack captain. Cf. in French "caoutchouc."

§ 9. THE CHANGE OF *e* TO *ë*.

The reader will have observed there is no symbol for *yo*, and the diæresis over *e* is only used in elementary school-books.

The following rules will guide him in the pronunciation of *e* as *ye*, or *yo*.

The rule is that accented *e* preceding a hard consonant or *oxytone* is pronounced *ë*.

e.g. село (šíló) village, plural сѣла, сѣль (sóľ, śol); пла́четь (pláčit) he weeps, but расцѣтъ (rastyót) he grows; ру́жье (ružó) gun; сме́рть (smert') death; ѣ́лушка (yóluskə), ѣ́лка (yoľkə) fir-tree; ме́ртвый (myórtvy) dead; ко́нею (kənyóm) by the horse; на́ше (náši) our (neut. nom. sing.); твое (tvayó) thy (neut. nom. sing.).

Exceptions:—

e accented before a hard syllable is *not* pronounced *ë*—

(1) In words ending in -ѣцъ, e.g. купѣцъ (kupéts) merchant. This is because ц was originally soft. [v. § 5 (4).]

(2) Before the adjectival terminations -скій and -иію, which are unaccented and were originally preceded by ъ, softening the consonant.

e.g. жена́ (žíná) wife, plur. жены́ (žóny), adj. же́нский (žénski).

(3) In foreign words.

e.g. апте́ка	(apt'ékə)	apothecary's shop
биле́тъ	(bilét)	ticket
депе́ша	(d'epéšə)	despatch

(4) In words from Church Slavonic.

e.g. крѣсть (křest) cross

нѣбо (něbǝ) heaven, but нѣбо palate of mouth

надѣжда (nad'ěždǝ) hope, but надѣжа (popularly)

And in some few other words, such as дѣрзкій bold, дѣрзость boldness, сквѣрный nasty, учебный educational, левъ lion (but Лѣвъ the name Leo), предметъ subject.

These words may also be taken as an exercise in the application of the rules regarding pronunciation.

(5) In some words where e should be spelt ѣ, which never undergoes this change, cf. § 2 (3).

e.g. блескъ brightness, мелкій little, мелочь trifle, вредъ damage

(6) The preposition безъ without, which is generally proclitic.

e.g. безъ щитá (bissčitá) without a shield

(7) In the words верхъ above, цѣрковь church, пѣрвый first, четвѣргъ Thursday, чѣрпать to draw up, мѣркнуть to grow dusk, стѣрва carrion, серпъ sickle, верба willow, сѣрдце heart, исчѣзъ vanished, ужѣ already, вообще in general.

ë remains before a soft consonant:—

(1) In declensions and conjugations where other forms are hard and ë is regular.

e.g. несѣшь несѣтъ, несѣмъ, несѣте

thou carriest he, we, ye carry

утѣсь precipice, на утѣсѣ on the precipice

so берѣза birch-tree, въ берѣзѣ in the birch.

(2) In the instrumental singular of soft feminine nouns in *я*, like the hard nouns.

e.g. *грозо́ю* (*гроза́* threat)

земле́ю (*земля́* earth)

But моёю, твоёю, своёю, with *е* not *ё*.

Also before the adjectival termination *-кій*. As explained in § 33 (8), this *-кій* is a grammarian's misrendering of the former form *-кой*, and, this *к* being only visually soft, there is no real exception to the rule. So, too, *щека́* cheek, *щёки* cheeks (because after gutturals *ы* is never used; v. § 5 (3)).

(3) In the following words *ѣ* becomes *ё*, like *е*, *ё*:—

<i>звѣзда́</i>	star	<i>звѣзды</i> (plural)
<i>гнѣздо́</i>	nest	<i>гнѣзда</i> (plural)
<i>приобрѣсти́</i>	to obtain	<i>приобрѣлъ*</i> (past tense)
<i>цвѣсти́</i>	to bloom	<i>цвѣлъ</i> (past tense)
<i>сѣдло́</i>	saddle	<i>сѣдла</i> (plural)
<i>надѣвать</i>	to dress	<i>надѣванъ</i> (past part. pass.)
		<i>позѣвывать</i> to yawn
		<i>запечатлѣнъ</i> impressed
		<i>смѣтка</i> sally

These words are merely misspelt.

In two words *я* is sounded *ё*:—

трясъ he shook, sounded *трѣсъ*

запрягъ he yoked (his horse), sounded *запрѣгъ*

Lastly, *ея́*, the genitive of *она́* she, is sometimes pronounced *её* like the accusative (which is *ее*, sounded *ййó*).

* And other compounds of this verb.

ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. THE PARTS OF SPEECH (ча́сти рѣчи).

The parts of speech in Russian are :—

<i>Declined</i>	{	(1) Nouns, <i>имя существительное</i>
		(2) Adjectives, <i>имя прилагательное</i>
		(3) Pronouns, <i>мѣстоимѣніе</i>
<i>Conjugated</i>	(4) Verbs, <i>глаголь</i>	
<i>Declined</i>	(5) Numerals, <i>имя числительное</i>	
<i>Uninflected</i>	{	(6) Adverbs, <i>нарѣчіе</i>
		(7) Prepositions, <i>предлогъ</i>
		(8) Conjunctions, <i>сою́зь</i>
		(9) Interjections, <i>междомѣтіе</i>

There is *no article*.

Occasionally *одинъ* (one) is used as an *indefinite article*.

There is *no special* form for adverbs formed from *adjectives*. The neuter singular is used, except in adjectives in *-скій*, where the form is *-ски*.

The verbs only have one regularly formed tense, namely the present ; and no other personal forms for past tenses, passives, moods, etc. These meanings are supplied by other simple modifications.

THE NOUN (имя существительное).

§ 11. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Russian noun has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter (роды мужескій, женскій, средній). But Russian presents no great difficulties in the ascertainment of gender, for—

(a) Nouns *proper or common* denoting males only, whatever the termination, are masculine (“natural” gender).

e.g. Ива́нъ John, Пётъ Peter, Ива́нко John, воево́да general, сиротá orphan (masc. or fem.).

(β) Nouns denoting females always have a feminine termination (“natural” and “grammatical” gender coincide).

(γ) The inflections of the masculine and neuter are identical, save in the nominative, vocative, and accusative singular and plural; just as in Latin *bellum* only differs from *equus* in these cases.

(δ) Generally speaking, the termination fixes the gender, unlike French or German, where the beginner has no guide, and can only learn by rote.

(i) Thus, nouns ending in *ъ*, *ь* and *й* are masculine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g.	сто́лъ	table	шрифѣ́тъ	writing
	Ца́рь	Tsar	университе́тъ	university
	ба́зисъ	basis	ко́нь	horse
	кри́зисъ	crisis	сло́нь	elephant
	соловѣ́й	nightingale		

(ii) Nouns ending in *о*, *е*, *ё* are neuter.

e.g.	по́ле	field	со́лнце	sun
	дѣ́ло	fact	бѣ́лье	washing

(iii) Words ending in а, я, ь are feminine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. рука hand пуля bullet
 драма drama (τὸ δράμα, le drame, das Drama,
 etc.)

With this apparent exception, *as in Latin and Greek*, that words in а and я of masculine signification are masculine, but declined like feminines. Unlike German or French, the gender primarily follows the meaning, not the termination.

e.g. мужчи́на man слуга́ man-servant
 дядя́ uncle Пётр Peter (short for Пётръ)
 юноша youth уби́йца murderer (masc. or fem.)

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Terminations :	ъ	а	о
	ь	я	е
	и	и	мя

§ 12. THE DECLENSIONS.

There are three declensions.

(1) Original *o*-stems: *masculines in* ъ, ь *and* и, *neuters in* о, ё, е.

(2) Original *a*-stems: *feminines in* а and я.

(3) Original *i*-stems:

(a) One masculine word, путь path.

(β) Many feminines, principally abstracts in -ость, e.g. ско́рость speed.

(γ) Two relics of older declensions:

ма́ть, ма́тери, cf. *mater, matris*, mother
 дочь, дочери daughter

(δ) Neuters in **мя, мени**.

e.g. **ѣмя, ѣмени** name, cf. Latin *nōmen, nōminis*; **сѣмя, сѣмени** seed, cf. Latin *sēmen, sēminis* [v. § 2 (2)]

In Old Slavonic there was, as in Latin, an *u* declension (e.g. *manus, manūs*). This has disappeared, but has left traces in the irregular genitives and locatives in *y* of the first (Russian) declension: also in the masculine genitive plural termination **-овъ**.

§ 13. THE CASES.

There are seven cases.

- (1) Nominative, **Именительный падежь**
- (2) Vocative, **Звательный** „
- (3) Accusative, **Винительный** „
- (4) Genitive, **Родительный** „
- (5) Dative, **Дательный** „
- (6) Instrumental, **Творительный** „
- (7) Locative or Prepositional, **Предложный падежь**

This list looks formidable, but, as with Apollyon's lion in "The Pilgrim's Progress," apprehensions vanish on a close approach.

The vocative only subsists in a few Church words, e.g. **Бо́же** from **Богъ** God, **Христѣ** from **Христѡсъ** Christ, **Господи** from **Господѣ** Lord, **Исѹсе** from **Исѹсъ** Jesus, **отче** from **отѣць** father. [v. § 69, II.]

The objective is identical with the nominative in all nouns denoting inanimate, but with the genitive in all nouns denoting animate objects. This rule has one exception—for the one instance where the accusative has an independent form, namely, the accusative singular of nouns in **a** and **я**.

e.g. **Я видѣлъ Царя** (genitive) **и Царѣцу**.

I saw the Tsar and the Tsaritsa.

Учитель прочелъ ваше сочинѣніе.

The teacher read your work.

The original Slav accusative has vanished (except in the singular of nouns in **а** and **я**), and has been replaced by the nominative or genitive forms.

In all negative sentences the object is in the genitive, whatever the noun, and without exception.

e.g. **Я не окончилъ своей работы.**

I have not finished my work; the genitive being *partitive* in meaning "nothing of my work."

Я никогда не слыхалъ такихъ сказокъ.

I never heard such stories.

The instrumental case marks the agent by whom, and the locative or prepositional is used to denote the place in which; in modern Russian *it cannot be used by itself*, but only with certain prepositions, hence it is often called the "prepositional."

e.g. **Въ селѣ** (*fsilě*) in the village.

Я говорилъ о Николаѣ (*ya govoril' anikolaye*).

I was talking of Nicholas.

Thus, virtually, there are only five separate forms for the cases—nominative, genitive, dative, instrumental, and locative.

§ 14. THE NUMBERS.

There are two numbers, singular and plural (**единственное число, множественное число**). The forms are almost identical for masculine nouns in **ъ, ъ, ѣ**, and feminines in **а, я**; neuters in **о, е, ё** only differ in forming the nominative and accusative plural in **а, я**, as in Latin.

In ancient Russian there was a dual, but this is obsolete. Some few forms of it survive as irregularities. [v. § 24 (3).]

The plural of nouns in **н**, of the third declension, is slightly different.

§ 15. HARD AND SOFT NOUNS.

All nouns of the first and second declensions are "hard" or "soft" throughout: i.e. there is a double scheme of declension in "hard" or "soft" vowels, according as the root is hard or soft.

Those who have learnt the rules in § 3 and § 5 will find no difficulty in grasping this fundamental difference, which underlies all Russian inflections.

Nouns of the *я* declension, the third, are naturally all "soft."

SCHEME OF DECLENSIONS.

	First Declension.				Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
	Masculine.		Neuter.		Feminine.		Fem.	Neut.
	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.		
<i>Sing.</i>								
Nom.	ъ	ь и	о	е ё	а	я	ь	мя
Acc.	Like N. or G.		о	е ё	у	ю	ь	мя
Gen.	а [y]	я [ю]	а	я	ы	и	и	мени
Dat.	у	ю	у	ю	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
Instr.	омъ	емъ	омъ	емъ	ою	ею	ію	менемъ
Loc.	ѣ [y]	ѣ [ю]	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
<i>Plur.</i>								
Nom.	ы	и	а	я	и	и	и	мена
Acc.	Like N. or G.		а	я	Like N. or G.		и	мена
Gen.	овъ ей	евъ ей	ь	ей	ѣ	ѣ ей	ей	менъ
Dat.	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	ямъ	менамъ
Instr.	ами	ями	ами	ями	ами	ями	ями	менами
Loc.	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	яхъ	менахъ

It will be observed that in the plurals there is scarcely any divergence.

§ 16. EXAMPLES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN THE
FIRST DECLENSION (пѣрвое склонѣніе).

Singular.

	tooth	work	cry
N. V.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Acc.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Gen.	зуба	трудá	крѣка
Dat.	зубу	трудú	крѣку
Instr.	зубомъ	трудóмъ	крѣкомъ
Loc.	зубѣ	трудѣ	крѣкѣ

Plural.

N. V.	зубы	труды	крѣки
Acc.	зубы	труды	крѣки
Gen.	зубóвъ	трудóвъ	крѣковъ
Dat.	зубáмъ	трудáмъ	крѣкамъ
Instr.	зубáми	трудáми	крѣками
Loc.	зубáхъ	трудáхъ	крѣкахъ

Singular.

	key	a German	march
N. V.	ключъ	нѣмецъ	маршъ
Acc.	ключъ	нѣмца	маршъ
Gen.	ключа	нѣмца	мáрша
Dat.	ключу	нѣмцу	мáршу
Instr.	ключóмъ	нѣмцемъ	мáршемъ
Loc.	ключѣ	нѣмцѣ	мáршѣ

Plural.

N. V.	ключи	нѣмцы	мáрши
Acc.	ключи	нѣмцевъ	мáрши
Gen.	ключей	нѣмцевъ	мáршей
Dat.	ключáмъ	нѣмцáмъ	мáршáмъ
Instr.	ключáми	нѣмцáми	мáршáми
Loc.	ключáхъ	нѣмцáхъ	мáршáхъ

These six examples illustrate regular forms in "hard" consonants. *Please observe the variations necessary after gutturals and palatals, and re-read § 5 (3) and (4). The rules in § 5 apply to all declensions and conjugations.* Thus *ключамъ* is sounded *klučám*, *марши* *máršy*, etc.

Examples of Weak Stems.

	hero	horse	battle	knife (ж originally soft)
N. V.	геро́й	ко́нь	бо́й	но́жъ
Acc.	геро́я	ко́ня	бо́я	но́жъ
Gen.	геро́я	ко́ня	бо́я	ножа́
Dat.	геро́ю	ко́ю	бо́ю	ножу́
Instr.	геро́емъ	ко́емъ	бо́емъ	ножо́мъ
Loc.	геро́ѣ	ко́ѣ	бо́ѣ	ножѣ́
<i>Plural.</i>				
N. V.	геро́и	ко́ни	бо́и	ножи́
Acc.	геро́евъ	ко́ней	бо́и	ножи́
Gen.	геро́евъ	ко́ней	боёвъ	ноже́й
Dat.	геро́ямъ	ко́нямъ	бо́ямъ	ножа́мъ
Instr.	геро́ями	ко́нями	бо́ями	ножа́ми
Loc.	геро́яхъ	ко́няхъ	бо́ихъ	ножа́хъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; they are explained, and rules stated, in § 5 (3) and (4).

§ 17. EXAMPLES OF NEUTER NOUNS OF FIRST
DECLENSION.

Hard Stems.

	yoke	village	quality
N. V. A.	ѣго	село́	ка́чество
Gen.	ѣга	села́	ка́чества
Dat.	ѣгу	селу́	ка́честву
Instr.	ѣгомъ	село́мъ	ка́чествомъ
Loc.	ѣгѣ	селѣ́	ка́чествѣ́

		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	и́га	се́ла	ка́чества
Gen.	и́гъ	се́лъ	ка́чествъ
Dat.	и́гамъ	се́ламъ	ка́чествамъ
Instr.	и́гами	се́лами	ка́чествами
Loc.	и́гахъ	се́лахъ	ка́чествахъ

Soft and Sibilant Stems.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	sea	school
N. V. A.	<u>мо́ре</u>	учи́лище
Gen.	мо́ря	учи́лища
Dat.	мо́рю	учи́лищу
Instr.	мо́ремъ	учи́лищемъ
Loc.	мо́рѣ	учи́лищѣ

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	мо́ря	учи́лища
Gen.	мо́рей	учи́лищъ
Dat.	мо́рямъ	учи́лищамъ
Instr.	мо́рями	учи́лищами
Loc.	мо́ряхъ	учи́лищахъ

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	gun	knowledge
N. V. A.	ру́жьё	<u>зна́нiе</u>
Gen.	ру́жьи	зна́нiя
Dat.	ру́жью	зна́нiю
Instr.	ру́жьёмъ	зна́нiемъ
Loc.	ру́жьѣ	зна́нiи

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	ру́жья	зна́нiя
Gen.	ру́жей	зна́нiй
Dat.	ру́жьямъ	зна́нiямъ
Instr.	ру́жьями	зна́нiями
Loc.	ру́жьяхъ	зна́нiяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; a discussion of them will be found in § 27.

§ 18. EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (второе склонение) IN *а* AND *я*.

The scheme for these nouns is:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	<i>а</i>	<i>я</i>	<i>ы</i>	<i>я</i>
Acc.	<i>у</i>	<i>ю</i>	Like N. or G. [v. § 13]	
Gen.	<i>ы</i>	<i>я</i>	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>ѣ</i>
Dat.	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>амъ</i>	<i>ямъ</i>
Instr.	<i>ою ой* ею ей*</i>		<i>ами</i>	<i>ями</i>
Loc.	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>ахъ</i>	<i>яхъ</i>

Examples:—

	Hard.	<i>Singular.</i> Hard.	Soft.	Sibilant.
	widow	hand	bullet	soul
N. V.	вдовá	руká	пу́ля	душа́
Acc.	вдову́	ру́ку	пу́лю	ду́шу
Gen.	вдовы́	руки́	пу́ли	души́
Instr.	вдово́ю	руко́ю	пу́лею	душо́ю
D. L.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́лѣ	душѣ́
		<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	вдовы́	ру́ки	пу́ли	души́
Acc.	вдовѣ́	ру́ки	пу́ли	душѣ́
Gen.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́лѣ	душѣ́
Instr.	вдова́ми	рука́ми	пу́лями	душáми
Dat.	вдова́мъ	рука́мъ	пу́лямъ	душáмъ
Loc.	вдова́хъ	рука́хъ	пу́ляхъ	душáхъ
		<i>Singular.</i>		
	Sibilant.	Hard.	Fricative.	Fricative.
	candle	tear	empress	food
N. V.	свѣ́ча	слезá	цари́ца	пи́ща
Acc.	свѣ́чу	слезу́	цари́цу	пи́щу
Gen.	свѣ́чи	слезы́	цари́цы	пи́щи
Instr.	{ свѣ́чею } { свѣ́чою }	слезо́ю	цари́цею	пи́щею
D. L.	свѣ́чѣ́	слезѣ́	цари́цѣ	пи́щѣ́

* Contracted form.

Plural.

1 N. V.	свѣчи	слёзы	царіцы
1 Acc.	свѣчи	слёзы	царіцѣ
2 Gen.	свѣчѣ	слёзѣ	царіцѣ
1 Instr.	свѣча́ми	слеза́ми	царіца́ми
2 Dat.	свѣча́мъ	слеза́мъ	царіца́мъ
1 Loc.	свѣча́хъ	слеза́хъ	царіца́хъ

For pronunciation consult §§ 2 (2), 5 (3), 5 (4).

*Soft and Vocalic Stems.**Singular.*

	earth	lightning	family
N. V.	земля́	мо́лнія	се́мья
Acc.	зе́млю	мо́лнію	се́мью
Gen.	земли́	мо́лніи	се́мьи
Instr.	земле́ю	мо́лніею	се́мьею
D. L.	землѣ́	мо́лніи	се́мьѣ́

Plural.

N. V.	зе́мля	мо́лнии	се́мьи
Acc.	зе́мля	мо́лнии	се́мей
Gen.	земель	мо́лній	се́мей
Instr.	земля́ми	мо́лніями	се́мьями
Dat.	земля́мъ	мо́лніямъ	се́мьямъ
Loc.	земля́хъ	мо́лніяхъ	се́мьяхъ

*Examples of Masc. in a, я.**Singular.*

	Hard.	Soft.
N. V.	ста́роста elder	дѣ́дя uncle
Acc.	ста́ро́сту	дѣ́дю
Gen.	ста́ро́сты	дѣ́ди
Instr.	ста́ро́стою	дѣ́дею
D. L.	ста́ро́стѣ	дѣ́дѣ

<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	ста́росты	дѣди
Acc.	ста́рость	дѣдей
Gen.	ста́рости	дѣдей
Instr.	ста́ростами	дѣдями
Dat.	ста́ростамъ	дѣдямъ
Loc.	ста́ростахъ	дѣдяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart. Consult § 2 (5), § 9, and § 11.

§ 19. THIRD DECLENSION (трѣтье склонѣнiе): NOUNS IN *и* and *мя*.

These nouns are always soft; most of the terminations are in *и*.*

MASCULINE.

Only one example survives:—

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	пу́ть path	N. V. A.	пути́
G. D. L.	пути́	Gen.	путѣй
Instr.	путѣмъ	Dat.	путѣмъ
		Instr.	путѣми
		Loc.	путѣхъ

Formerly there were others of this type; e.g. *день* day, now a soft masc. of the first declension. But “after midday” is “*пo-пoлyднi*” (*pəpəlúdní*); *дни* being the old genitive.

§ 20. THIRD DECLENSION IN *и*: FEMININES.

These are numerous and important. In form they are liable to confusion with soft masculines like *конь* horse.

* Just like the Latin *turris*; with which type they correspond philologically.

E.g.

Singular.

	bone	horse	door
N. V.	кость	лошадь	дверь
Acc.	кость	лошадь	
Gen.	кости	лошади	Declined like кость
Dat.	кости	лошади	
Loc.	кости	лошади	
Instr.	костью	лошадью	
	костьюю	лошадію	

Plural.

N. V.	кости	лошади	Declined like кость
Acc.	кости	лошадѣй	
Gen.	костѣй	лошадѣй	
Dat.	костѣмъ	лошадѣмъ	
Instr.	костѣми	лошадѣми	
Loc.	костѣхъ	лошадѣхъ	

Singular.

	fortress	care
N. V.	крѣпость	осторожность
Acc.	крѣпость	осторожность
Gen.	крѣпости	осторожности
Dat.	крѣпости	осторожности
Loc.	крѣпости	осторожности
Instr.	крѣпостью	осторожностью

Plural.

N. V.	крѣпости	—
Acc.	крѣпости	—
Gen.	крѣпостѣй	—
Dat.	крѣпостѣмъ	—
Instr.	крѣпостѣми	—
Loc.	крѣпостѣхъ	—

Observe звѣрь wild beast, which is now masculine has звѣрьми instr. plural, besides звѣрьми.

§ 21. THIRD DECLENSION IN *н*: NEUTERS IN *мя*.

Consult § 2 (2).

Those who know Latin grammar have learnt the forms like *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *sēmen*, *sēminis*.

The Russian words of this type are very similar. E.g.

<i>Sing.</i>	name	flame	tribe	seed
Nom. Voc. Acc.	имѣя	плѣмя	плѣмя	сѣмя*
Gen. Dat. Loc.	имени			
Instr.	именемъ			
<i>Plur.</i>				
Nom. Voc. Acc.	именá	Like имѣя	Like имѣя	Like имѣя, but gen. plural сѣмянъ
Gen.	имѣнъ			
Dat.	именáмъ			
Instr.	именáми			
Loc.	именáхъ			

§ 22. THIRD DECLENSION: REMAINS OF OLDER FORMS.

(1) *Feminine*: There are only two.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	mother	daughter
Nom. Voc.	мать	дочь
A. G. D. L.	мáтери	дóчери
Instr.	мáтерью	дóчерью
	<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. Voc.	мáтери	дóчери
Acc. Gen.	матерéй	дочерéй
Dat.	матерíмъ	дочерíмъ
Instr.	{ матерíми матерьмí	{ дочерíми дочерьмí
Loc.	матерíхъ	дочерíхъ

Cf. *māter*, *mātris*; μήτηρ, μητρός; θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός.

* Cf. Latin *sēmen*.

(2) *Neuter*: There is only one, and this noun is irregular.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	child		children
Nom. Voc. Acc.	дитя́	Nom. Voc.	дѣти
Gen. Dat. Loc.	дитя́ти	Acc. Gen.	дѣтѣй
Instr.	дитя́тею	Dat.	дѣтямъ
		Inst.	дѣтьми (and дѣтьми)
		Loc.	дѣтяхъ

§ 23. (1) The foregoing sections, 16 to 22, illustrate the rules of Russian declension.

Some space must still be devoted to *apparent* exceptions (for euphonic reasons), to *true* exceptions (which are very few), and the principles of the accentuation in each class.

It is assumed that the reader has mastered §§ 2-6 and § 9, which supply the phonetic basis, the fundamental laws of Russian orthography.

(2) Some nouns are used only in the plural. These are masculine, feminine or neuter, according as their genitive assigns them to one or other of the declensions.

e.g. но́жницы, но́жницъ, etc., fem., scissors

щипцы́, щипцо́въ, etc., masc., pincers

воро́та, воро́тъ, etc., neut., gates

(3) Some nouns are indeclinable; namely, those which do *not* end in *ъ, ь, ѣ, а, я* (m. and f.), and *о, е* (neut.). Such are (i) a few Russian words, e.g. ко́фе coffee. (ii) Many foreign words, especially proper names; e.g. Са́рти Sarti, Пе́трѹччо Petruccio, Лу́бѣ Loubet, Ма́рте́лло Martello. The case in which these nouns stand must be understood from the context; e.g. въ по́эзіи Ло́нгфелло in

Longfellow's poetry, во время президентства Карно́ in the Presidency of Carnot. On the other hand, names like Рена́нь Renan, Дина́нь Dinant, Аахенъ Aix-la-Chapelle, Шопе́нь Chopin, are declined like ordinary nouns. [v. § 7.] E.g. Рѣчь сэра Эдуарда Гре́я, the speech of Sir Edward Grey (Грей).

§ 24. REMARKS ON THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE
FIRST DECLENSION.

(1) In old Slavonic, as in Latin, there used to be a declension in "u," e.g. *mānus*, *manūs*; e.g. in Russian сынъ son (Gothic *sunus*). This declension has completely vanished, but has left traces in the following irregularities:—

(a) Some nouns, denoting materials, have mostly *unaccented* genitive in -у, -ю.

e.g. ча́ю from чай tea
сáхару from сáхаръ sugar
наро́ду from наро́дъ people

e.g. ча́шка ча́ю a cup of tea, but э́тотъ родъ
сáхара this sort of sugar.

e.g. мно́го наро́ду many people, хара́ктеръ а́нглий-
скаго наро́да the character of the English
people.

Also in the phrases:—

съ ве́рху from on high
съ ни́зу from beneath
безъ то́лку senseless
изъ ви́ду out of sight

and a few others.

(β) Some *monosyllables* have a locative in -у, -ю *accented*, used with въ in, на on.

e.g. въ лѣсу́ in the forest, but при лѣсѣ́ at the wood
 въ годѹ́ in the year
 въ бою́ in the fight
 въ краю́ on the edge
 на льду́ on the ice
 въ снѣгѹ́ in the snow
 въ раю́ in Paradise
 на берегу́ on the shore [v. § 5 (5).]

(γ) сынъ son, кумъ godfather, and others, insert the syllable -ов- into the plural.

e.g. [сыны́ sons (poetical)] сыновья́
 кумъ godfather кумовья́
 зять son-in-law зятевя́
 свать marriage-broker сватовья́

(δ) It is in the nouns in “u” that the genitive plural -овъ originated; it has spread to nearly all masculine stems.

(2) Some nouns form their plural in -ья; this is really an old feminine collective form.

e.g. братъ brother, братья́ (gen. братьевъ, dat. братьямъ, instr. братьями, loc. братьяхъ)
 камень stone, камénья stones, камни́ single stones
 бросать ка́мня́ми, not ка́мения́ми, to stone a man
 стулъ a chair, сту́лья
 сукъ a bough, сучья́ [v. § 5 (3).]
 уголь coal, уго́лья

зубъ tooth, зѹбѹя teeth (of a machine), зѹбы
teeth (of a man)

листь leaf, лѣствѹя leaves of a tree, листы (leaves
of paper)

другъ friend, друзѹи (gen. друзѣи)

князь prince, князѹи (gen. князѣи)

мужъ husband, мужѹи (gen. мужѣи)

зять son-in-law, зятѹи (gen. зятѣи), also зятевѹи

деверь the husband's brother, деверѹи (gen.
деверѣи)

(3) Some masculine nouns form their plural in -á.

e.g. рукавъ	sleeve	рукава́
бе́регъ	shore	берега́
глазъ	eye	глаза́
пóлогъ	bed-sanory	полога́
рогъ	horn	рога́
коло́колъ	bell	колокола́

It will be observed most of these are essentially
duals in meaning; *this á is the old dual, Nom. and Acc.*
Cf. § 26 (5) (3).

This á ending has been extended to a few nouns—

e.g. го́родъ	town	города́
лѣсъ	wood	лѣса́
го́лосъ	voice	голоса́
домъ	house	дома́

as well as most loan-words in -еръ and -оръ—

e.g. до́кторъ	doctor	доктора́
профе́ссоръ	professor	профессора́
кучеръ	coachman	кучера́
<i>but</i> актёръ	actor (French <i>actéur</i>)	актёра́
импера́торъ	Emperor	императоры́

Other instances are :—

о́бразъ	shapes	о́бразы	shapes	о́бразá	images
хлѣ́бъ	bread	хлѣ́бы	loaves	хлѣ́ба	corn
цвѣ́тъ	colour	цвѣ́ты	flowers	цвѣ́та	colours
мѣ́хъ	bellows	мѣ́хи			
мѣ́хъ	fur	мѣ́ха			
о́рдена	the order	о́рдены	the orders	о́рдена	the orders
		(e.g. religious)		(decorations)	

(4) The genitive plural of masculines in -ъ originally ended in -ъ, and was only accentually differentiated from the nominative. This genitive plural in -ъ still obtains in the neuters and feminines. [v. § 24 (1) (δ).]

Hence it is (v. paradigm § 15) that masculines ending in a weak consonant form the genitive plural in -ей; e.g. царь, царя́, царь'ъ, which became царь'й, and was pronounced and spelled царей in Russian, after ь and ъ had become mute.

So, too, words in -жъ, -а, -шъ (e.g. ножъ knife, ножá, ножей), because [v. § 5 (4)] ж and ш, and ч and щ *were all originally soft*.

But й is regarded as a consonantal ending, and takes -евъ; e.g. строи construction, строевъ.

Some masculine nouns still have a genitive plural in -ъ,

e.g.	во́лосъ	hair	<i>Gen. plur.</i> волосъ
	разъ	time (so many times)	разъ
	сапо́гъ	boot	сапо́гъ
	драгу́нъ	dragoon	драгу́нъ
	ту́рокъ	Turk	ту́рокъ
	гренаде́рь	grenadier	гренаде́рь
	глазъ	eye	глазъ
	ре́крутъ	recruit	ре́крутъ

as well as all those which form their nominative singular in *-инъ*, and are thus distinguished by diversifying the nominative.

Lastly, masculine nouns of measurement—

e.g. *фунтъ* a pound (= 90 lb. *avoirdupois*)

сажень a lineal measure (= 7 feet)

make their genitive plural thus: *фунтъ, сажень*.

(5) Nom. sing. in *-инъ*.

Many words, especially words descriptive of race, creed, etc., have a *singular* with the adjectival form *-инъ* [v. § 34 (2)], but drop the *-инъ* in the plural, forming the nom. plural in *-е* or *-а*. E.g.

	Roman	Christian	Englishman
Nom. sing.	Рѣмлянинъ	христiанинъ	Англичанинъ
Gen. sing.	Рѣмлянина	христiанина	Англичанина
Nom. plur.	Рѣмляне	христiане	Англичане
Gen. plur.	Рѣмлянъ	христiанъ	Англичанъ

	Tatar	master	wife's brother
Nom. sing.	татáринъ	бáринъ	шúринъ
Gen. sing.	татáрина	бáрина	шúрина
Nom. plur.	{ татáры }	бáре	шурý
Gen. plur.	татáръ	баръ	шурýевъ

хозяинъ (master of the house) is not quite regular. In the *singular*, *хозяинъ, хозяина*, etc.

Plural Nom. Voc. *хозяева* [cf. § 24 (1) (γ)]

„ Acc. Gen. *хозяевъ*

„ Dat. Instr. Loc. *хозяевъ, амь, ами, ахъ*

In this connection [v. § 34 (2)] the possessive adjectives in *-инъ* used as *proper names* are declined as stated in that section, and not like the above.

(6) Irregular formations.

Singular.

	Christ	The Lord
Nom.	Христѡсъ	Господѣ (Насрѡд')
Voc.	Христѣ	Гѡсподи
Gen.	Христѡ	Гѡспода
Dat.	Христѣу	Гѡсподу
Instr.	Христѡмъ	Гѡсподомъ
Loc.	Христѣ	Гѡсподѣ

neighbour			devil	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Voc.	сосѣдъ	сосѣди	чортъ*	чѣрти
Acc.	сосѣда	сосѣдей	чѡрта	чѣртѣй
Gen.	etc.	Like наръ, soft stem.	чѡрта	Like наръ, soft stem.
Dat.			чѡрту	
Instr.			чѡртомъ	
Loc.			чѡртѣ	

человѣкъ, man (in general : мужъ husband, мужчина male), generally forms its plural in люди (declined like a plural of an *и* stem).

When the plural is used, the genitive plural is человѣкъ, e.g. двадцать человѣкъ twenty men.

§ 25. ACCENTUATION OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Most masculine nouns retain the accent of the nominative ; but, as the original nominative termination *ъ* has become mute, and cannot be accented, some nouns seem to throw the accent forward on to the other terminations.

* Not to be confused with чѣрѡ (fem.) feature.

E.g. **человѣ́къ** man, **са́ра́й** barn, **бра́тъ** brother, retain the accent on the syllable accented in the nominative, i.e. on the stem; e.g. **человѣ́комъ**, **са́раю**, **бра́та**.

No general rule can explain the variance of the accent; the following principles may be a guide.

I. The following derivatives were originally accented on the termination **ъ**, and therefore throw the accent forward on to the other terminations:—

- (1) All names in **-и́нъ**, e.g. **Ка́рамзи́нъ** Karamzin.
- (2) All words in **-ѣ́цъ**, e.g. **купе́цъ** merchant.
- (3) All derivatives in **-а́къ**,* **-и́къ**, **-я́къ**, **-о́къ**, **-ѣ́жъ**, **-а́чъ**; e.g. **дура́къ** fool, **ста́ри́къ** old man, **паде́жъ** case, **пала́чъ** executioner, **кусо́къ** morsel, **скрипа́чъ** fiddler, **тю́фя́къ** mattress.
- (4) All derivatives in **-у́нъ**, **-а́рь** (except **госуда́рь** Lord, as a royal title, **госуда́ря**), **-и́рь**, **-и́ръ**, and the months in **-бръ**; e.g. **девя́таго октяб́ря** on the 9th October, **табу́нъ** herd of horses, **стола́рь** carpenter, **пузы́рь** bellows; but **па́нцырь** (**па́нцыря**) cuirass.
- (5) A very large number of words, such as **сто́лъ** table, **бы́къ** ox, **жени́хъ** bridegroom, **пло́дъ** fruit, **полкъ** regiment, **язы́къ** tongue, **пѣ́тухъ** cock. Nothing but reading and practice can determine which these are.

II. Secondly, many words retain the accent as in the nominative in the singular, but throw it forward in the plural; e.g. **са́дъ** garden, **чи́нъ** rank, **ша́гъ** step.

* Cf. the Greek accent *ακός, ικός*,

III. Thirdly, some words throw the accent forward on to the termination in the genitive plural and following cases.

e.g. богъ	god	богѡвъ
воръ	thief	ворáми
гвоздь	nail	гвоздѣми
крѹгъ	circle	кругáмъ
лѣбедь	swan	о лебедѣхъ

In all cases the original accent on the nominative must be learnt from the dictionary or a teacher; *as a general rule, a masculine noun that throws its accent forward on the genitive singular throws it forward on to all the terminations; and a noun not accented on the last syllable retains the same accent throughout.*

This section must be read subject to all the rules stated in § 24 and § 9.

§ 26. REMARKS ON THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Except, in so far as the masculine nouns have more inflections, the special remarks in § 24 apply to neuters as well.

(1) In § 24 (4) it was observed that all masculine nouns of the first declension ending in a consonant + ь or -жъ, -шъ, -щъ, -чъ (which were all originally soft, v. § 5 (4)), form the genitive plural in -ей. The same applies to all soft neuter nouns in -е, and the same arguments hold good.

e.g. поле field полей

Some such nouns form a genitive plural in *ьевъ*, e.g. *платье* clothing, *платьевъ*; *кушанье* food, *кушаньевъ*; but these are exceptions, for such nouns are in reality paroxytone collectives, the old collective termination being *-ѣ*, plural *-ѧ*.

These nouns are *only* found in the contracted form, and may be compared with the plurals *друзья*, *братья* [v. § 24 (2)].

(3) *Mixed masculine and neuter declension.*

Augmentative nouns in *-ище*, e.g. *село* village, *селище* a big village, form their plural like that of the soft masculine nouns, e.g. *конь*. Thus *селищи*, *селищей*, etc. But *кладбище*, cemetery, is regular; the augmentative sense has disappeared.

So, too, *diminutives* in *-ко*.

e.g. *словечко* a little word

Pl. Nom. Voc. Acc. *словечки*

Gen. *словечекъ* [v. § 6.]

Observe, too, *очко*, *очки* (little eyes), now spectacles; *очковъ*, and so on.

Some other miscellaneous examples are:—

солнце sun *солнца* and *-ы* *солнцевъ*

дно bottom *дны* *донъ*

яблоко apple *яблоки* *яблокъ* от *яблоковъ*

(4) *Plurals in -ѧ* [v. § 24 (2)].

Neuter words capable of a collective meaning have a collective plural like the masculine nouns.

e.g. *дѣрево* tree *дерѣвѧ*

перо feather *перѧ*

крыло wing *крыла* and *крылѧ*

Observe.—колѣно, knee, has three meanings and three plurals: (1) колѣна́ family or race; (2) колѣни, колѣне́и knees; (3) колѣ́нья, колѣ́ньевъ knots on wood.

(5) *Irregular forms.*

These may conveniently be considered under two heads: (a) obsolete declensions, of which a few relics subsist; (b) dual forms.

(a) *Obsolete forms.*

Не́бо heaven, чу́до miracle, сло́во word, тѣ́ло body, ко́ло wheel, formerly belonged to the same declension as the Latin *genus, generis*, Greek *νέφος, νέφους (νέφεσος)*. Hence the adjectival forms are: словесный literary, небесный heavenly, чудесный wonderful, тѣлесный corporeal, and колёсный pertaining to a wheel.

Of all these forms only two survive in regular use: чу́до, чудеса́, чудесъ [not чудёсь, cf. § 9, exception (4)]; and не́бо, небеса́, небесъ [not небёсь].

The modern Russian for wheel is колесо́, plural колёса.

Сло́во and тѣ́ло are regular like дѣ́ло.

In words denoting the young of animals a plural -ята is still used, the singular being -ёнокъ.

e.g.	котёнокъ	kitten	котята, котятъ
	жеребёнокъ	colt	жеребята, жеребятъ
	волчёнокъ	wolf-cub	волчата, волчатъ

[v. § 5 (3).]

So, too, цыплё́та chickens, ребя́та children (in lofty language, used as the plural of ребёнокъ), etc., and also вну́къ grandson, внуча́та great grand-children.

(B) Dual forms.

о́ко	eye (poetical only)	о́чи, о́чей
у́хо	ear	у́ши, у́шей
ко́лѣно	knee	ко́лѣни, ко́лѣней
сто	one hundred	двѣ́сти two hundred
плечо́	shoulder	плѣ́чи, плечѹ́

§ 27. ACCENTUATION OF THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

As in all cases the accent on the nominative must be ascertained from the dictionary or the teacher.

Dissyllabic words reverse the accent in the plural.

e.g. тѣ́лю	body	тѣ́ла
мо́ре	sea	моря́
се́ло	village	се́ла [v. § 9.]
ребро́	rib	рёбра
де́рево	tree	дерёвья
писа́мо	letter	пи́сьма, пи́семъ
пра́во	right	права́
се́рдце	heart	серди́а
Except блю́до	vessel	блю́да
го́рло	throat	го́рла

Trisyllabic nouns, if oxytone, have the plural paroxytone; if the stem is accented, make the plural oxytone.

e.g. колесо́	wheel	колёса
полотно́	cloth	полотна́
зе́ркало	mirror	зеркала́, зе́ркаль or зерка́ль
кру́жево	lace	кружева́, кру́жевъ
о́зеро	lake	озера́ or озёра

Derivative nouns in -іє, -ство, retain the same accent.

e.g. существó	being	существо́ва
знáніє	knowledge	знáнія
праві́тельство	administration	праві́тельства

§ 28. REMARKS ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей.

Practically the same conditions obtain as with the neuters. [v. § 26 (1).]

Soft nouns in -я and -ча, -ша and -жа, regularly form the genitive plural in -ь and -чъ, and the instrumental singular in -ёю, -ею; -чою, -чею; -шою, -шею; -жою, -жею. [v. § 5 (4).] So, too, nouns in -ца preceded by a vowel: instrumental singular -цою, -цею; genitive plural -цъ.

But nouns in -ча, -жа, -ша, when preceded by a consonant, form the genitive plural in -ей: and the same applies to nouns in -ща.

e.g. вѣ́кша	squirrel	вѣ́кшей
саранча́	grasshopper	саранче́й
Similarly: дѣ́дя	uncle	дѣ́дей
ноздри́	nostril	ноздре́й
до́ля	lot	до́ль and долѣ́й
за́ря	dawn*	за́рь and зарѣ́й

Nouns in -ья also have a genitive plural in -ей *regularly*, when accented; -ій unaccented.

e.g. лгу́нья	liar	лгу́вѣй
статья́	article	статѣ́й
госты́я	guest (fem.)	гості́й
свинѣ́я	pig	свинѣ́й

* Also the evening half-light.

(2) In ordinary speech and in poetry the instrumental singular -ою, -ею is contracted to -ой and -ей, and often thus written.

(3) Many nouns in the second declension are masculine, *because of their meaning*, as in Latin *agricola*.

e.g. дѣдя uncle, юноша youth, Саша diminutive of Александръ, Колья diminutive of Николай, Петья diminutive of Пётръ, слуга servant (feminine form служанка), сирота orphan, masc. or fem. *according to meaning*, судья judge, бродяга vagabond.

(4) There are very many derivative nouns in -ія, amongst them the loan-words from the Latin *tio*, e.g. нація nation.

The rule regarding these is the same as with the derivative neuters in -іе [v. § 26 (2)], namely that the ѣ forms are written and sounded и.

e.g. армія army, въ арміи in the army, армій genitive plural; so, too, Армѣнія Armenia, Англія England, Франція France, etc.

Note.—Марія, о Маріи; but Мάρья, о Мάρѣѣ, Mary.

§ 29. ACCENTUATION OF SECOND DECLENSION.

The rules for the accentuation of this declension are comparatively easy.

Only oxytone nouns, i.e. those accented on the final syllable, can shift the accent. All others retain the accent on the same syllable.

Of oxytone nouns only those which are dissyllabic can shift the accent.

Amongst these [v. § 5 (5)] must be included liquid stems, such as борода́ beard, голова́ head (contrast глава́ chapter).

Trisyllabic and polysyllabic nouns retain the same fixed accent.

For the *oxytone dissyllables* there are two sets of rules.

(a) The accent goes back on the root *only* in the nom. plur.

e.g. вдова́	widow	вдо́вы
волна́	wave	во́лны
игра́	game	и́гры
ре́ка	river	ре́ки
судья́	judge	су́дья
слуга́	servant	слу́ги
стрѣла́	arrow	стрѣ́лы
струна́	string	стру́ны
	(e.g. of violin)	
узда́	reins	у́зды

and a few others.

(β) The accent goes back to the stem in the acc. sing. as well.

e.g. рука́	hand	ру́ку, ру́ки
(Occasionally, by analogy, жёнамъ, жёнами, жёнахъ ; сёстрамъ, зёмлямъ, звѣздамъ are mistakenly used.)		
борода́	beard	бóроду, бóроды
вода́	water	во́ду, во́ды
нога́	foot	но́гу, но́ги

§ 30. REMARKS ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The original nouns belonging to this class are few in number, but very common in use. Some of them have both Slavonic and Russian forms [v. § 5 (5)].

e.g. **во́лость** an administrative district, **вла́сть** power.*

The derivative nouns in **-ость** are innumerable, and abstract nouns are mostly created with this termination. All such derivative nouns accent the root-syllable. [v. § 98, V.]

e.g. **ста́ръ** old, **ста́рость** old age.

(1) There is a special accented locative ending in **и́**, used *only* after **на** and **въ** [cf. § 24 (1)].

e.g. **гру́дь** breast, **на груди́**; **вѣ́твь** twig, **на вѣтви́**;
сте́пь steppe, **въ степи́**; **Русь** Russia (poetical,
 usual word **Росси́я**), **на Руси́**.

(2) **Цѣ́рковь** church, has in the dat., instr., and loc. plural a for **я**.

i.e. **церква́мъ**, **-а́ми**, **-а́хъ**

§ 31. ACCENTUATION OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The accentuation follows the paradigms in § 20; but some reservations must be made.

(1) Many of these nouns accent the termination on the *dative, instrumental, and locative plural*.

e.g. **до́лжность** duty, **должно́стямъ**, **-ѣмѣ́**, **-ѣхъ**

* Such feminines in **-ость** and **-чь** correspond etymologically with the English forms "might," "draught," German "Wacht," etc.

(2) Amongst such nouns, the following have the accented locative singular [v. § 30].

бровь	brow	печь	oven	связь	connection
грудь	breast	рѣчь	speech	часть	part
кость	bone	степь	steppe	площадь	
честь	honour	тѣнь	shadow	public square	
ось	axle	цѣпь*	chain		

§ 32. THE "EUPHONIC" VOWELS o, e, ë.

In § 2 (7) and § 6 brief reference was made to the former vocalic values of **ѣ** and **ѥ**, as short **ö** and **ĩ**, and to the aversion of the Russian language from heavy combinations of final consonants, especially when there are liquids (such as **в**, **р** and **л**) in the conglomeration.

Under these two heads simple phonetic changes, *which are written*, occur in *all* the declensions, and these rules must be applied to all of the declensions.

I. *Extrusion of ѣ and ѥ when unaccented.* The ancient Russian for "day" was **дѣнь-ѥ'**. When **ѥ** became mute, being "open," the first vowel was transformed to **e**; hence the nominative **дѣнь**, genitive **днѣя**. Similarly **дно́** bottom, gen. pl. **донѣ** (for **дѣнь-ѣ'**, **дѣнь**).

This law may be tabulated:—

ѣ, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes **o**; unaccented disappears.

ѥ, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes **e** or **ë**; unaccented disappears, or is retained in spelling to soften the consonant.

* Not to be confused with **цѣпъ** flail.

e.g. **лѡбѣ** (formerly **лѣбѣ**) forehead, gen. **лѡ́а**;
ротѣ (formerly **рѣтѣ**) mouth, gen. **рот́а**; **левѣ**
 (formerly **лѣвѣ**) lion, gen. **лѡ́ва** *; **сотѣ**, gen.
 of **сто** (for **сѣто**), one hundred; **лѣдѣ** ice
 (**лѣдѣ**), gen. **лѣд́а**.*

*Incidentally it may be stated here that the great complication in the accentuation of masculines arises from the loss of the final inflection of the nominative. Most Russian nouns retain the accent on the same syllable; but where the original inflection was formerly accented and has become mute (i.e. either **ѣ** or **ѡ**), the accent had to be thrown back.*

In the feminines and neuters the original inflection a, o, has been retained; hence the rules are much simpler.

Similar instances are: **пѣсѣ** dog, genitive **пѣа**;
мгнѣ, but **мгновѣніе**, both meaning moment,
 the latter should have been spelt **мгновѣніе**;
мгл́а mist, for **мгн́ла**; **возѣ**, verbal prefix
 meaning "up," but **взраст́аѣ** to grow up (for
възраст́аѣ); **сонѣ** sleep, **сна́**; **лѣнѣ** linen, **лѣн́а**,
 etc.

As a contrast: Russian, **мѣдѣ**, **мѣда** mead (the drink), Old Russian, **медѣ**, **мѣда**; i.e. the original accent was on the stem.

Some other instances may illustrate the same point. All derivatives in **ѣтѣ** (formerly **ѣѣѣ**) were once oxytone, i.e. accenting the termination **ѣ**'; hence, they "throw the accent forward" in the other inflections, and extrude the **ѣ** of the nominative which is merely epenthetic, a strengthening of the original **ѣ** (**отѣѣ**).

* The **ѣ** is retained to indicate the soft sound.

So that the genitive of отецъ is отца ; so, too—

купѣцъ	merchant	купца
вѣнецъ	wreath	вѣнца

But, where the -ецъ is unaccented, the accent is stable and the form merely abbreviated in spelling, e.g. Пѣмецъ German (for Пѣмьць), Пѣмца, etc.

Conversely in the genitive plurals in ѣ or ѥ, о, е; е must be restored.

e.g. яйцѣ	egg	яицъ *
злѣ	evil	золь
кольцѣ	ring	кольцъ
письмѣ	letter	письмъ
окнѣ	window	оконъ
стеклѣ	pane of glass	стѣколъ
крѣслѣ	armchair	крѣсель
овца	sheep	овецъ
судьба	fate	судѣбъ
ручка	little hand	ручекъ
копѣйка	the coin	копѣекъ

* And observe that after a vowel the symbol ѣ replaces the symbol ѥ, but has the same value.

e.g. шея neck, diminutive шейка, шеѣкъ, i.e. šeika, šeik ; соловѣй nightingale, соловья, соловѣвъ ; муравѣй ant, муравья, муравѣвъ.

In these last two instances ѣй represents an original ѥй, which in Russian became ѣй. The original inflection would have been соловѣ'й, соловѣ'я.

II. *Insertion of o and e for euphony.* Similarly, heavy final combinations of consonants are lightened in

* Irregular for яецъ.

the nominative singular of masculines and genitive plurals of feminines and neuters; i.e. the terminations in *ъ* and *ь*.

Some instances have already been given; viz. *стекло́, прѣсло́, писъмѡ́*.

Others are :—

		<i>Gen. Plur.</i>
<i>ма́рка</i>	a <i>mark</i> (German coin)	<i>ма́рокъ</i>
<i>и́гла</i>	needle	<i>и́голъ</i>
<i>и́гра</i>	game	<i>и́горъ</i>
<i>ро́зга</i>	cane	<i>ро́зогъ</i>
<i>сестра́</i>	sister	<i>сестѣръ</i> or <i>сѣстръ</i>
<i>пѣ́сня</i>	song	<i>пѣ́сенъ</i>
<i>ба́рышня</i>	“mademoiselle”	<i>ба́рышень</i>
<i>со́тня</i>	a body of one hundred	<i>со́тень</i>
<i>ку́хня</i>	kitchen	<i>ку́хонъ</i> or <i>ку́хонь</i>
<i>зем.лѣ́</i>	earth	<i>земѣ́ль</i>
<i>ребро́</i>	rib	<i>ребѣ́рь</i>
<i>ведро́</i>	ewer	<i>веде́рь</i>

In the nominatives :—

		<i>Gen.</i>
<i>орѣ́ль</i> (pronounce <i>aryól</i>)	eagle	<i>орла́</i>
<i>огонѣ́ь</i>	fire	<i>огня́</i>
<i>вѣ́теръ</i>	wind	<i>вѣ́тра</i>
<i>ви́хоръ</i>	whirlwind	<i>ви́хря</i>
<i>наѣ́мъ</i>	hire	<i>найма́</i>
<i>боѣ́цъ</i>	warrior	<i>бойца́</i>
<i>за́яцъ</i>	hare	<i>за́йца</i>

Observe the vowel *o* or *e* is inserted according as the syllable is hard or soft.

Thus, too, тѣмá darkness, тѣмный dark, тща́тельно (for тща́тельно) in vain, тощи́й lean, and compare Russian дочь, дѣ́чери, daughter, with the Church Slavonic дщѣри (for дѣщѣри), cf. θυγατέρες.*

An apparent exception really confirms the rule, namely, that, when the effect of extruding the euphonic vowel would be to accumulate consonants, the vowel is retained.

e.g. мертвѣ́ць	corpse	мертвеца́
близне́ць	twin	близнеца́

III. Nevertheless, some heavy combinations of final consonants are tolerated.

(1) In loan words.

e.g. шриф́тъ type (from German) [v. § 11 (δ).]
минист́ръ minister (from French)

(2) In the genitive plural of the abstract termination -ство.

e.g. общ́ствъ from общество́ company
минист́рствъ from министрѣ́ство ministry

(3) In a few words where resolution would not be easy.

e.g. жѣ́ртва sacrifice жертвѣ́

(4) In such words as руб́ль (masculine) rouble, кора́бль ship (masculine like конѣ́), the л is mute. [v. § 4 (9).]

(5) In the formation of predicative adjectives no vowel is inserted before р.

e.g. му́дръ wise, бы́стръ swift. [v. § 36 (4).]

* Whence па́дче́рица, § 97.

IV. In the feminine in *и* of the third declension observe—

цѣрковь	church	цѣркѣи, цѣрковью
любовь	love	любови, любовью
вошь	louse	вши, вощью
ложь	lie	лжи, ложью
рожь	rye	ржи, рожью

But when *Любовь* is a girl's name it retains in “*о*” throughout; thus, *Любови, Любовью*.

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *The syntactical importance of the adjective in Russian.*

In English the adjectival function can be expressed in many really irregular ways; e.g. by a noun, “the village pump”; by combinations of adjectives and nouns, “the Civil Service Examination,” even to the point of ambiguity, e.g. “the Women’s Red Cross Slavery Abolition League”; also, vulgarly, by adverbs, “this ’ere bloke.” In German, also, long compound nouns are yet more used to show the dependence.

Russian adjectives are fully declined in gender, number, and case.

In Russian, composition of words is rare and occasional, and fully declined adjectives must be used.

e.g. зубная боль tooth-ache

правительственные указы government decrees

баранья шерсть sheep’s wool, etc.

Cf. in French, le ministère de l’intérieur, Home Office; les perquisitions militaires, war demands.

(2) In addition to this, Russian frequently prefers an adjective where other languages use other forms.

e.g. стеклѣнная бутылка a glass bottle, une bouteille de ver; St. Elias' day Плъпъ день; Igor's Army Ёгоревь полкъ; the local custom тамошній или здѣшний обычай (from тамъ there, здѣсь here); a reindeer's horns олѣньи рога.

Such adjectives are called *possessive*, e.g. Петровъ праздникъ St. Peter's holiday; Царѣцyno село the Empress's village; or *descriptive*, e.g. божій храмъ God's Temple.

Ordinary adjectives when used with nouns are called *attributive*, e.g. добрый good, художественный artistic; i.e. those not attached to some particular noun, and not serving as a kind of inflected genitive.

(3) Except in the nominative (e masculine, я feminine and neuter) there is no distinction of gender in the plural adjective.

(4) Russian discards the copula "I am, he is," etc., and uses a special form as the *predicative* adjective; this form being the nominative, singular and plural, of the old simple form of the attributive adjective.

e.g. я Георгій	I am George
онъ столяръ	he is a carpenter
они мнѣ знакомы	they are known to me

(5) The attributive adjective can in general have two forms as stated in the preceding section (4), one full, when agreeing with a noun, the other predicative; the latter only used and only surviving with a nomina-

tive form. (Certain predicative relations are expressed by a dative or instrumental, v. § 69, V. and VI.).

This apparent anomaly requires explanation. In older Russian, as in the Teutonic languages, there were two forms of adjectival declension, the determinative and the simple.

The simple form, as in most European languages, was inflected almost the same as the noun, an adjective being in a sense only a fuller form of noun capable of all three genders. Thus *Rōmānus* in Latin is exactly like *equus*, horse, *Rōmāna* like *mensa*, and *Rōmānum* like *bellum*; so, too, *ingens* has the same forms as *gens*, and so on. Similarly, in French the adjective *occidental* follows the form of the noun *cheval*, and *occidentale* of any feminine noun. In Latin there exists little but a grammarian's distinction between *bonus*, *bona*, good, masculine and feminine, and *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter.

So, too, in Russian the simple adjective originally followed nominal declensions almost exactly.

But, there being no article, the Old Slav pronoun *ѣ*, he (obsolete in Russian), was compounded with and postponed to the simple form to make the so-called *determinative* form [v. § 35].

Thus as in German we find *guter Mann*, but *der gute Mann*, in older Russian, too, two forms existed. In modern Russian the *determinative* form has swept the simple form out of existence, except (a) in the nominative when used predicatively, (β) in the possessives and descriptives, some of which follow the simple inflection, (γ) in rather high-flown archaistic style when the old simple forms are used.

(6) The accentuation of the determinative, possessive and descriptive forms, is constant; that of the simple form is very difficult, as difficult as the nominal forms which it follows. We have seen [§ 25] how the loss of the nominative suffix *ъ*, *ь* has confused the rules for accentuation, and [§§ 27 and 29] the slighter variances in the neuters and feminines. All these rules come in to complicate the formation of the predicative adjective.

(7) In modern Russian no instance survives of adjectives in the third declension.

(8) In the eighteenth century, when Lomonósov (1711–1765) created the modern Russian script out of the old Cyrillic, and set hard and fast rules for Russian, the grammarians introduced some unnecessary complications in the spelling of the determinative forms; e.g. *но́вый* new, *ди́кий* wild, for *но́вой*, *ди́кой* (*но́вые* masc. pl., *но́выя* fem. and neut. pl.).

(9) The adjective may acquire a substantival meaning, but is still declined as an adjective.

e.g. <i>городово́й</i>	policeman
<i>портно́й</i>	tailor
<i>насе́комое</i>	insect
<i>сто́ловая</i>	dining-room
<i>дѣ́тская</i>	nursery

§ 34. THE SIMPLE, POSSESSIVE AND DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) For *reference* this is an example of the simple adjective. These forms are now disused save as stated in § 33 (5).

Dear

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	дóрогъ	дóрого	дорогá	дóрогí
Acc.	Like N. or G.	дóрого	дорогý	Like N. or G.
Gen.	дорогá		дóрогí	дóрогíхъ
Dat.	дорогý		дóрогѣ	дóрогíмъ
Instr.	дóрогíмъ		дóрогóю	дóрогíми
Loc.	дóрогóмъ		дóрогѣ	дóрогíхъ

Good

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	дóбръ	дóбрó	дóбрá	дóбрí
Acc.	Like N. or G.	дóбрó	дóбру	Like N. or G.
Gen.	дóбрá		дóбры	дóбрыхъ
Dat.	дóбру		дóбрѣ	дóбрымъ
Instr.	дóбрымъ		дóброю	дóбрыми
Loc.	дóбромъ		дóбрѣ	дóбрыхъ

(2) *The formation of possessive adjectives and examples.*

Possessive adjectives are formed from names in the first and second declensions; those from the first end in -овъ, those from the second in -ынъ, -инъ.

The accentuation is *constant throughout all* the cases. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from monosyllables generally accent the termination: Петрóвъ Peter's, Царéвъ the Tsar's. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from other names, not monosyllables, retain the accent as in the name: e.g. Алексéй, Алексéевъ; Алексáндръ, Алексáндровъ.

Adjectives in -ннѣ are similarly declined, and retain the accent of the name.

e.g. Саша	(Alexander)	Сашинѣ
Никѣта*	Nikíta	Никѣтинѣ
Ильѣ	Elias	Ильѣнѣ
Троица	Trinity	Троицынѣ
сестра́	sister	сестринѣ
Цари́ца	Tsarítsa	Царѣцынѣ
дѣ́дя	uncle	дѣ́динѣ

Note.—Nouns in -ца take -цынѣ; and мужъ husband, братъ brother, господъ Lord, irregularly form мужнинѣ, братнинѣ, господень.

The two following examples illustrate the declensions:—

Peter's				
	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	Петро́въ	Петро́во	Петро́ва	Петро́вы
Acc.	Like N. or G.	Петро́во	Петро́ву	Like N. or G.
Gen.	Петро́ва		Петро́вой	Петро́выхъ
Dat.	Петро́ву		Петро́вой	Петро́вымъ
Instr.	Петро́вымъ		Петро́вою	Петро́выми
Loc.	Петро́вомъ		Петро́вой	Петро́выхъ

Lord's				
	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	госпо́день	госпо́дне	госпо́дня	госпо́дни
Acc.	Like N. or G.	госпо́дне	госпо́дню	Like N. or G.
Gen.	госпо́дня		госпо́дней	госпо́днихъ
Dat.	госпо́дню		госпо́дней	госпо́днимъ
Instr.	госпо́днимъ		госпо́днею	госпо́дними
Loc.	госпо́днемъ		госпо́дней	госпо́днихъ

* Νικήτης.

Note that very many family names end in -овъ and -инъ, and are similarly declined, *except* that the locative singular masculine is -ѣ.

e.g. въ Петровомъ письмѣ in Peter's letter, but
я говорѣлъ о Петровѣ I was speaking of
Petróv.

(3) *Formation of descriptive adjectives.*

Most of these adjectives are soft, being formed from nouns by adding -іи to the stem. The nominative singular is, masc. -іи, neut. -ье, fem. -ья; and the accent is *constant* and *always* that of the noun. The accusative singular feminine is also in -ью.

Otherwise their declension is like that of the soft determinatives. [v. § 35 (2).]

Observe that the rules in § 5 as to mutation of consonants must be applied in the formation of these adjectives.

e.g. волкъ wolf, волчій, волчье, волчья
Богъ god, божій, божье, божья
лиса fox, лісій, лісье, лісья
дѣвица or дѣвица maiden, дѣвичій, дѣвичье,
дѣвичья
пёсъ dog, пёсій, пёсье, пёсья, i.e. пёсья звѣзда
the dog-star

Also дѣрево wood, деревянный wooden
кожа leather, кожаный of leather

This termination -янный is hard, and is generally applied to words denoting materials.

§ 35. THE DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) *The scheme and the formation.*

This form of adjective is the most common in Russian, embracing all adjectives except the simpler declensions stated in § 34 (1) and (2).

The paradigms inserted *infra* are to illustrate the application of the rules in § 5 to these adjectives.

A short historical statement will explain away the apparent complications.

In Old Slavonic there was a 3rd person pronoun declined as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ
Acc.	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ
Gen.	ѡѡ	ѡѡ	ѡѡ	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡ
Dat.	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ
Instr.	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ
Loc.	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡѡ

By adding this vocalic pronoun on to the simple adjectival forms, like a postponed article, a *determinative* form was obtained, which in the older language had a slightly different meaning, such as is given in English by the use of the definite article.

In modern Russian the simple form is obsolete in the Nom., but a survey of the paradigm of the full adjective will show where the fusion has taken place, e.g. мо́лодь, мо́лодой, i.e. мо́лодѣи, and so on.

Remember that in Russian the *r* of the genitive singular is sounded *в*. [v. § 5 (3) (3).]

<i>Singular.</i>						<i>Plural.</i>					
Masc.		Neut.		Fem.		Masc.		Neut.		Fem.	
Hard	Soft*	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft
N. ый	ий	ое	ее	ая	яя	ые	ие	ья	ія	ья	ія
ой accented											
A. As N or G		ое	ее	ую	юю	N. or G.		Nom.		N. or G.	
Masc. and Neut.						All genders.					
G. аго		аго		ой	ей	ыхъ		ихъ			
ого accented											
D. ому		ему		ой	ей	ымъ		имъ			
I. ымъ		имъ		ою†	ею	ими		ими			
L. омъ		емъ		ой	ей	ыхъ		ихъ			

The eighteenth century grammarians are responsible for two unnecessary complications.

(i) The invariable nom. sing. masc. hard should be **-ой**, as **ъ** when sounded in Russian becomes *о*. [v. § 32, I.]

But it was decreed that the spelling should be **-ой**, only when the termination was accented; otherwise **-ий**.

Consequently in guttural stems [v. § 5 (3)] this **-ый** had to be spelled **-ий**.

e.g. **новый** new, **дикий** wild

But in such cases **дикий** and similar words are still sounded *d'ikəi*, as though spelt **дикой**; whereas **дикие**, where the *i* is there of right, is pronounced *d'ikiyě*.

* There are *no* soft adjectives accented on the termination except palatal stems (nominally hard).

† Commonly contracted, v. § 28 (2).

(ii) The only plural nominative form *should* be -е. The -я is purely orthographic, and in all cases the е and the я in -ья, -ье, -ья, -ье, -ия, -ие are sounded alike, viz. үѣ.
e.g. дѳбрыя dѳbryѣ, худья (худѳй bad) khudýѣ

(iii) When the termination is accented, it is usual to write -ѳго and not -аго.

e.g. храбрѳго of the brave man (khrábrѳvѳ); but
чужѳго of the strange man (čужѳvѳ).

TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>Hard.</i>		Full form.		Short form.
	Masc.	-ый	мѳлый	мѳль gentle
	Neut.	-ѳе	мѳлѳе	мѳлѳ
	Fem.	-ая	мѳлая	мѳла
<i>Soft.</i>	Masc.	-ій	сѳній	сѳнь blue
	Neut.	-ѳе	сѳнѳе	сѳнѳ
	Fem.	-ая	сѳняя	сѳня

(2) *Examples of the determinative adjective.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	бѳльй	бѳлѳе	бѳлая
Acc.	N. or G.	бѳлѳе	бѳлую
Gen.		бѳлаго	бѳлой
Dat.		бѳлому	бѳлой
Instr.		бѳлымѳ	бѳлою
Loc.		бѳломѳ	бѳлой
<i>Plural.</i>			
Nom.	бѳлые	бѳлыя	бѳлыя
Acc.	N. or G.	бѳлыя	N. or G.
Gen.		бѳлыѳѳ	
Dat.		бѳлымѳ	
Instr.		бѳлыми	
Loc.		бѳлыѳѳ	
бѳль, бѳла, бѳло, бѳлы white.			

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Nom.	прямóи	прямóе	прямáя
Acc.	N. or G.	прямóе	прямúю
Gen.	прямóю		прямóи
Dat.	прямóму		прямóи
Instr.	прямýмъ		прямóю
Loc.	прямóмъ		прямóи

	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Nom.	прямýе	прямýи	прямýя
Acc.	N. or G.	прямýи	N. or G.
Gen.	прямýиъ		
Dat.	прямýмъ		
Instr.	прямýми		
Loc.	прямýихъ		

прямъ, прямá, прýмо, прýмы upright.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Nom.	сýнii	сýнee	сýнля
Acc.	N. or G.	сýнee	сýнюю
Gen.	сýнлю		сýней
Dat.	сýнему		сýней
Instr.	сýнимъ		сýнею
Loc.	сýнемъ		сýней

	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Nom.	сýнiе	сýнiя	сýнiя
Acc.	N. or G.	сýнiя	N. or G.
Gen.	сýнииъ		
Dat.	сýниимъ		
Instr.	сýниими		
Loc.	сýниихъ		

сýнь, сýнiя, сýне, сýни blue

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáнiй	барáнье	барáнья
Acc.	N. or G.	барáнье	барáнью
Gen.	барáнью		барáньей
Dat.	барáньему		барáньей
Instr.	барáньими		барáньею
Loc.	барáньемъ		барáньей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáньи	барáньи	барáньи
Acc.	N. or G.	барáньи	N. or G.
Gen.		барáньихъ	
Dat.		барáньимъ	
Instr.		барáньими	
Loc.		барáньихъ	

барáнiй, барáнья, барáнье, барáньи of a ram [v. § 34 (3)].

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	вели́кiй	вели́кое	вели́кая
Acc.	N. or G.	вели́кое	вели́кую
Gen.	вели́каго		вели́кой
Dat.	вели́кому		вели́кой
Instr.	вели́кимъ		вели́кою
Loc.	вели́комъ		вели́кой

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	вели́кие	вели́кия	
Acc.	N. or G.	вели́кия	N. or G.
Gen.		вели́кихъ	
Dat.		вели́кимъ	
Instr.		вели́кими	
Loc.		вели́кихъ	

вели́къ, вели́ка, вели́ко, вели́ки great.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большой	большое	большая
Acc.	N. or G.	большое	большую
Gen.	большого		большой
Dat.	большому		большой
Instr.	большимъ		большою
Loc.	большомъ		большой

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большие	большие	
Acc.	N. or G.	большие	N. or G.
Gen.		большихъ	
Dat.		большимъ	
Instr.		большими	
Loc.		большихъ	

Not used predicatively. большой, big, large.
Thus: чужой, чужь, чуже, чужа, чужи strange.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣжій	свѣжее	свѣжая
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣжее	свѣжую
Gen.	свѣжаго*		свѣжей
Dat.	свѣжему		свѣжей
Instr.	свѣжимъ		свѣжею
Loc.	свѣжемъ		свѣжей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣжие	свѣжія	
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣжія	N. or G.
Gen.		свѣжихъ	
Dat.		свѣжимъ	
Instr.		свѣжими	
Loc.		свѣжихъ	

свѣжъ, свѣжа, свѣжо, свѣжі fresh. Thus: хорошій, хорошъ, хорошó, хороша, хороші excellent.

* Sounded svěživъ.

§ 36. THE FORMATION OF THE PREDICATIVES.

Consult § 32 regarding the "insertion" of *o* and *e* to avoid an accumulation of final consonants.

(1) The following determinative adjectives have *no special* predicative form, and predicatively the full form must be used:—

- (a) All adjectives in *-скій*, e.g. *англійскій* English, *французскій* French, *русскій* Russian, *городской* municipal, etc.
- (β) *большой* big (physically): *-великъ* is used, e.g. *этотъ мужъ великъ* this man is tall; but *этотъ домъ большой*, this house is big.
- (γ) Adjectives denoting materials in *-янный*, e.g. *деревянный* wooden, *серебрянный* silver, etc., and the descriptive adjectives, such as *бараний* of a ram, v. § 34 (3).

(2) The following adjectives are *only* used in the predicative form: *радъ* glad, *гораздъ* skilful.

e.g. *я очень радъ* I am very glad, *она на всё горазда* she is clever in everything.

(3) *Possessives* [v. § 34 (2)] are *only* declined with the simple forms.

Possessives in *-овъ* never shift their accent.

Possessives in *-ннъ* are thus accented: *сестринъ*, *сестрина*, *сестрино*, *сестрины*, as *predicatives*.

(4) All other adjectives have both forms, and the predicative has to be deduced from the determinative.

In polysyllabic derivative adjectives there is generally no change of accent.

e.g. мѹжественный masculine, мѹжественъ, мѹжественна, мѹжественно

But in simpler original adjectives there is practically no rule but experience. A few instances may be given.

e.g. (i) нѹвый new, новъ, новá, нѹво, нѹвы

Thus, too, бодръ gay, быстръ swift, великъ big, гордъ proud, твердъ hard, тихъ still, толстъ fat, старъ old, цѣлъ whole, чистъ clean. [v. § 32, II.]

Thus, too:—

тѣмный dark, тѣмень, темна́, темно́, темны́
красный red, красенъ, красна́, красно, красны́
тѣплый hot, тёпелъ, тепла́, тепло́, теплы́
чѣрный black, чѣренъ, черна́, черно́, черны́

(ii) го́лый naked, голъ, гола́, голо́, голы́

Thus, too, высо́къ lofty, далѣ́къ far, тяжѣ́лъ heavy, бѣ́лый white, ширѹ́къ far.

e.g. далѹ́кій, далѣ́къ, далека́, далеко́, далѣ́ки

(iii) во́льный free, волѣ́нъ, вольна́, вольно́, вольны́

Thus, too, лё́гкий light (in weight), лёго́къ, легка́, легко́, легки́; си́льный powerful, у́мный sensible.

(iv) су́хой dry, сухá, су́хо, сухи́

Thus, too, босъ barefooted, глухъ deaf, гниль foul, дѹрогъ dear, живъ alive, мо́лодь young, нагъ naked, нѣ́мъ dumb, плохъ poorly, слѣ́пъ blind, хромъ lame, etc.; бо́льный sick, бо́ленъ, больна́, бо́льно, больны́; честнѹ́й or чѣстный honest, чѣстенъ, честна́, чѣстно, чѣстны́.

§ 37. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Formation.*

(1) The Russian adjective has two degrees of comparison, comparative and superlative.

The comparative is in two forms: uninflected, e.g. *бóльше радъ*, from *радъ* glad; inflected, e.g. *глубже* deeper, from *глубокий*.

The inflected comparative has a predicative and determinative form, e.g. *бѣлѣе*, *бѣлѣйшій* whiter.

It is formed from the positive in two ways—by adding *-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій* to the stem, the accent generally shifting to the termination; or by adding *-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій* to the stem, the accent remaining on the radical syllable.

-ѣе, *-ѣйшій*, has become the *regular* form.

When adding either termination, *-ѣе* or *-ѣе*, the rules for the mutation of consonants [v. § 5] must be strictly observed, and should be re-perused before the student proceeds any further with this section. In addition, he should remember [v. § 2 (3)] that in older Russian *ѣ* had a value approximating to *я*, and therefore, just as *к*, *г*, *х* + *я* in modern Russian make *ча*, *жа*, *ша*, so, too, in the comparatives *к*, *г*, *х* + *-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій*, make *чайшій*, *жайшій*, *шайшій*.

Similarly, *ск* or *ст* + *-ѣйшій* or *-ѣе* make *-ще*, *-щайшій*, e.g. *чѣстый* pure, *чѣще*, *чѣщайшій*; *плóскій* flat, *плóщайшій*.

(2) No inflections for the superlative exist.

The comparative form is used, or the positive with suitable pronouns or adverbs. So, too, “beautiful,” “content” in English have no inflected degrees of comparison.

In some cases, where the shorter comparative is used, the longer form is reserved as a superlative.

e.g. **высо́кій** high, **вы́ше**, **вы́сшій**; superlative **высоча́йшій**.

(3) The substitutes for the superlative are:—

(a) The prefixing of **наи-** to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Вотъ наи-лу́чшій при́мѣръ.**

This is the best example.

Это наи-мѣ́ньшая сѹ́мма.

This is the least sum.

(β) The prefixing of **самый**, self, to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Это са́мая интѣ́ресная кни́га изъ всѣ́хъ мно́ю прочита́нныхъ.**

This is the most interesting book of those
I have read.

Нашъ домъ са́мый краси́вый въ дере́внѣ.

Our home is the prettiest in the village.

(γ) The addition of a form of **весь**, all, to the comparative, either **всего́** or **всѣ́хъ**.

e.g. **Эта кни́га интѣ́реси́ѣе всѣ́хъ кото́рыхъ я прочита́лъ.**

This book is the most interesting of any
I have read.

Вашъ совѣ́тъ поле́зниѣе всѣ́хъ.

Your advice is the best.

- (δ) The absolute superlative, as in English, is indicated by the positive with such words as *очень* very, etc.

e.g. *Обѣдъ былъ очень вкусенъ.*

The dinner was very tasty.

- (ε) The superlative also can be formed by using—
въ высшей стѣпени in the highest degree.

e.g. *Онъ въ высшей стѣпени великодѣшнъ.*

He is most generous.

§ 33. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Rules.*

I. The uninflected form, i.e. with *болѣ* more, is used:—

- (a) With adjectives like *радъ* glad.

- (β) At discretion with lengthy adjectives, e.g. *болѣ глубокий* deeper.

- (γ) When there is a comparison of two adjectives.

e.g. *Рѣка Москвѣ болѣ широкá нѣжели глубока́.*

The river Moscow is broader than it is deep.

- (δ) With adjectives (such as participles, derivative words, etc.), which it would be inconvenient to lengthen any more.

e.g. *Никогдá не видála своего мѹжа болѣ оскорблѣннымъ.*

She had never seen her husband more grieved.

У него́ болѣ живóй умъ.

He has a keener mind.

- (ε) Adjectives ending in *-скій*, *-скóй*.

II. Only four adjectives have a simple inflected superlative.

e.g. низкій	low	нижайшій
высокій	high	высочайшій
глубокій	deep	глубочайшій
малый	small	малѣйшій
		(better пай-мѣньше)

III. Adjectives in -сый, -жій, -зый, -чій, and many in -кій, -гій, have no *declinable* comparative.

e.g. лысый	bald	лысѣ
свѣжій	fresh	свѣжѣ
горячій	warm	горячѣ

The reason probably is that where the regular form -ѣ, -ѣйшій is used, the combination of sibilants would be too heavy, e.g. лысѣйшій, свѣжѣйшій, горячѣйшій, and the want is supplied in other ways; *v.* next subdivision.

IV. The indeclinable comparative with the prefix по- can be used in concord with a noun.

e.g. Я купилъ шляпу побольше.
I have bought a larger hat.

When the object of comparison is stated, the prefix по- has a diminutive sense.

e.g. Ваша лошадь по-быстрѣ Ивановой.
Your horse is a little quicker than that of Iván.

V. There are two methods of translating "than":—

- (1) The use of *чѣмъ*, or rarely *нѣжели*: when a phrase follows the comparison.

e.g. *Этотъ урокъ легче чѣмъ (нѣжели) мы думали.*
This lesson is easier than we thought.

- (2) When the object of comparison is a noun, the noun may be in the genitive.

e.g. *Юрійъ умнѣе своего брата Кузьмы.*
George is more sensible than his brother Kuźmá.

§ 39. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Examples.

I. The regular form of comparison is *-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій*, predicative indeclinable and declinable.

e.g. *любезный* amiable, *любезнѣе*, *любезнѣйшій*
-ѣе is often abbreviated to *-ѣи*.

When the positive cannot in *any* part of its declension throw the accent on to the ending, the original accentuation is retained.

e.g. *справедливый* just, *справедливѣе*, *справедливѣйшій*

II. Another very common form is *-ѣе*, *-ѣшій*, the adjective retaining its original accent.

This is nearly always used when the positive drops a suffix, e.g. *-ный*, *-кій*, and the comparative termination is attached to the root.

With a very few adjectives the predicative neuter -ше, of the declinable form -ѣишѣ, is used alternatively with -ѣ.

(a) Where the suffix of the positive is retained :—

e.g.	крѣпкій	powerful	крѣ́пче	крѣ́пчайші́й
	лёгкій	light (in weight)	лёгче	легча́йші́й
	мѣлкій	small	мѣ́льче	мельча́йші́й
	бойкій	brisk	бойча́ще (a modern form)	
	ло́вкій	clever	ловча́ще	
	го́рькій	bitter	го́рше	

(b) Where the suffix of the positive is dropped in the undeclined comparative, but generally retained in the determinative :—

e.g.	высо́кій	high	вы́ше	вы́сшій *	высоча́йші́й
	глубо́кій	deep	глубѣ́		глубоча́йші́й
	ни́зкій	low	ни́же	ни́зшій	ни́жайші́й
	позднѣ́й *	late	позже́		позднѣ́йші́й
	близ́кій	near	бли́же		бли́жайші́й
	у́зкій	narrow	у́же		
	рѣ́дкій	rare	рѣ́же		рѣ́дча́йші́й
	слад́кій	sweet	сладше́†		сладча́йші́й
	крот́кій	gentle	[кроче́]‡		кротча́йші́й
	корот́кій	short	короче́		кратча́йші́й
	то́нкій	thin	то́ньше		тонча́йші́й
	широ́кій	broad	ши́ре		ши́роча́йші́й
	далѣ́кій	far	далѣ́ше		далѣ́нѣ́йші́й

* V. § 4 (7) and (9).

† A Church Slav mutation from тѣ.

‡ More usually бо́лье крот́кій.

(c) When the positive is not altered, there being no suffix: -

e.g. твёрдый	hard	твёрже	твёрдѣйшій
богатый	rich	{ богаче богатѣ }	богатѣйшій
худой	bad, lean	{ хуже (bad) худѣ (lean) }	худшій худѣйшій
плоский	flat	плосче	
тихий	quiet	тише	тишайшій
строгий	stern	строже	строжайшій
дорогой	dear	дороже	дражайшій
молодой	young	моложе	младшій
старый	old	старше	старшій
крутой	steep	круче	крутѣйшій
дешёвый	cheap	дешевле	
пустой	{ desolate empty }	пуще пустѣ	пущій пустѣйшій
чистый	clean	чище	чистѣйшій

It will be observed that in modern Russian the mutations mostly only occur in the uninflected form of the comparative.

Note, too—

длиннй long, длинше (irregular, due to analogy of больше)
далёкий far, дальше or далѣе, дальшѣйшій (from дальный)
рано (adverb) early, раньше or ранѣе

With these few exceptions the comparison of the adjective is regular; and all derivative adjectives, e.g. знаменитый famous, proceed in accordance with the rule, знаменитѣе, знаменитѣйшій.

So, too, сердитый angry.

The inflected comparative of such words is rarely used; the superlative replaced, as stated in § 37 (3).

III. The following adjectives have no positive:—

e.g. *лучше, лучший* better; *меньше, меньше, меньший* smaller; *больше, больше, больший* bigger.

Observe the distinction:—

<i>меньшой</i> junior	<i>большой</i> big
<i>меньший</i> smaller	<i>большій</i> bigger

Хороший and *добрый* are used as positives for *лучше*; but *добрѣ, добрейший* also exist; also *малый* as a positive for *меньше*; and *великий* and *большой* for *больше, больше*.

THE PRONOUN.

§ 40 (1). PRELIMINARY REMARKS ON THE PRONOUN.

The pronouns in Russian present very little difficulty.

Observe (1) in the pronouns the genitive in -ro is written -oro, -ero, and pronounced and accented *аро, еро*. The dative in -my is also oxytone.

(2) Pronominal adjectives (such as *какой, такой*) are declined exactly like ordinary adjectives [v. § 35 (2)].

(3) It will be observed that pronouns, though they are hard stems, take a *soft* plural, e.g. *самъ* self, *сами*.

The reason of this is that in Old Russian the nominative and accusative plural masculine were *и* and *ы*. In Russian the old feminine plural forms in *ы* have superseded the masculine; but the same survival of the old nominative is found in the old participles in -лъ, now used as the past tense, e.g. *былъ, были*.

§ 40 (2). TABLE OF RUSSIAN PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

Interrogative	кто who?	что what?	кой* which?	чей whose?	какъ how?	гдѣ where?	куда whither?	откуда whence?	какой what sort?	когда when?	почему† why?	сколько how much?
Relative	кто	что	кой*	чей	какъ якъ*	гдѣ	куда	откуда	какой	когда	почему	сколько
Demonstrative (remote)	тотъ	то	свой† его ея§	его ея§ ихъ	такъ	тамъ	туда	оттуда	такой таковой	тогда	потому	столько
Demonstrative (near)	этотъ	это			этакъ	здесь			этакій (эдакій)			
Demonstrative (remote)	оный	оно										
Demonstrative (near)	сей	сіе сѣ			якъ*		сюда	отсюда отсѣду				
Universals	каждый every весь all всякій everyone	всѣ			все таки зпущуway	вездѣ повсюду every- where		отовсюду	всякій every	всегда always		

Personal	я		мой		его		нашъ		вашъ		ихъ** (вои)†	
	1st per. sing.	2nd " "	3rd " "	1st " plur.	2nd " "	3rd " "	1st " plur.	2nd " "	3rd " "	1st " plur.	2nd " "	3rd " "
Reflexive	себя†											
Indefinite	кто-то	что-то	кто-то	что-то	кто-то	что-то	кто-то	что-то	кто-то	что-то	кто-то	что-то
Negative	никого	ничего	никого	ничего	никого	ничего	никого	ничего	никого	ничего	никого	ничего
Identity	самъ	самый	самый	тотъ-же	тотъ-же	тотъ-же	тотъ-же	тотъ-же	тотъ-же	тотъ-же	тотъ-же	тотъ-же
Difference	другой	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной

* Obsolete. † Or with any suitable preposition, e.g. причём. ‡ Reflexive for all persons. § Genitives, cf. Latin *uius*.
 || только, like Latin *tantum*, means "only." ¶ Both sounded *они*. ** *нѣмѣ* vulgar.

§ 41. EXAMPLES OF THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative* (singular and plural).

N. V.	кто (khtó)	for persons	что (stó)	for things
Acc.	кого́ (kavó)	„ „	что	„ „
Gen.	кого́	„ „	чего́ (civó)	„ „
Dat.	кому́	„ „	чему́	„ „
Instr.	ке́мъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „
Loc.	кемъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „

ко́тóryй (which of several?) and ка́кой (of what sort?) are declined adjectivally.

кой which?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	кой	ко́е	ко́я	ко́и
Acc.	N. or G.	ко́е	ко́ю	N. or G.
Gen.	ко́его		ко́ей	ко́ихъ
Dat.	ко́ему		ко́ей	ко́имъ
Instr.	ко́имъ		ко́ею	ко́ими
Loc.	ко́емъ		ко́ей	ко́ихъ

чей whose?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	чей	чье́	чья	чьи
Acc.	N. or G.	чье́	чью	N. or G.
Gen.	чье́го (čivó)		чье́й	чьи́хъ
Dat.	чье́му		чье́й	чьи́мъ
Instr.	чьи́мъ		чье́ю	чьи́ми
Loc.	чье́мъ		чье́й	чьи́хъ

* Sounded kóyivъ.

Remarks.—(1) *кой* is practically disused except in poetry, and a few proverbs.

(2) *сѣ́лько* is the only other declinable interrogative form.

Nom.	Voc.	Acc.	сѣ́лько
Gen.	Loc.		сѣ́лькѣхъ
Dat.			сѣ́лькѣмъ
Instr.			сѣ́лькѣми

сѣ́лько is similarly declined.

Observe.—In the nominative and accusative *сѣ́лько* is a noun governing the genitive plural; in other cases an adjective.

e.g. *Сѣ́лько книгъ вы нашли?*

How many books have you found?

Я самъ не знаю сѣ́лькими странами я владѣю.

I do not myself know of how many countries

I am the master.

II. *Relatives.*

These forms are now identical with the interrogatives. But, except in proverbs and poetry, *кто* and *что* are disused, *ко́торый* replacing them as relatives.

кто and *что* are scarcely ever used in strict apposition.

e.g. *Я встрѣтилъ Ива́на ко́торому я обѣща́лъ мою ло́шадь.*

I met John to whom I had promised my horse.

But they are commonly employed in distributive phrases *where the relative precedes*.

e.g. Кто бы ни появлялся у окна, въ тогó немéдленно стрѣляли.

Whoever appeared at a window, (at him) they instantly shot.

Что бы вы ни дѣлали, вы э́тимъ горю не помóжете.
Whatever you do, you will not remedy the sorrow thereby.

III. *Demonstratives.*

тотъ that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	тотъ	то	та	тѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	то	ту	N. or G.
Gen.	того*		той	тѣхъ
Dat.	тому́		той	тѣмъ
Instr.	тѣмъ		тою	тѣми
Loc.	томъ		той	тѣхъ

э́тотъ this

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	э́тотъ	э́то	э́та	э́ти
Acc.	N. or G.	э́то	э́ту	N. or G.
Gen.	э́того		э́той	э́тихъ
Dat.	э́тому		э́той	э́тимъ
Instr.	э́тимъ		э́тою	э́тими
Loc.	э́томъ		э́той	э́тихъ

о́ный that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.				о́ные, о́ныя
Acc.	Like any hard adjective in -ый			о́ныхъ
Gen.				о́ныхъ
Dat.				о́нымъ
Instr.				о́ными
Loc.				о́ныхъ

* Sounded tavó.

сей this				
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	сеи	сіе сѣ	сіѧ	сіи
Acc.	N. or G.	сіе сѣ	сію	N. or G.
Gen.	сего*		сеи	сѧхъ
Dat.	семѹ		сеи	симъ
Instr.	симъ		сею	сѧми
Loc.	сѣмъ		сеи	сѧхъ

Consult § 2 (3).

All the rest of the declinable pronouns on the demonstrative lines in the table follow the regular forms of the determinative adjectives without variation. e.g. тако́й, таково́й such as that; э́такий such as this, etc.

Remarks.—Practically only *тогъ* and *э́тогъ* are used in modern Russian. *о́ный* is found in legal documents, and *сей* in set phrases; e.g. *сего́дня* (sívódn'ya) to-day, *сейча́съ* in a minute, *до сѧхъ поръ* up to the present, *сію ми́нѹту* this very minute.

IV. *Universal Pronouns.*

всѧкій of all sorts, and *ка́ждый* each, are declined like the determinative adjectives.

весь, all, drops the vowel “e” [v. § 32, I].

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	весь	всѣ	вся	всѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	всѣ	всю	N. or G.
Gen.	всего†		всей	всѣхъ
Dat.	всемѹ		всей	всѣмъ
Instr.	всѣмъ		всѣю	всѣми
Loc.	всѣмъ		всей	всѣхъ

* Sounded sívó.

† Sounded sŕívó.

V. *Personal Pronouns and Possessives.**Singular.*

	1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.		Reflexive.
			Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	я	ты	онъ	оно	она
Acc.	меня	тебя	его*	её	себя
Gen.	меня	тебя	его	ея †	себя
Dat.	мнѣ	тебѣ	ему	ей	себѣ
Instr.	мною	тобою	имъ	ёю	собою
	мною	тобой			собою
Loc.	мнѣ	тебѣ	ёмъ	ей	себѣ

Plural.

Nom.	мы	вы	они	они	они ‡
A.G.L.	насъ	васъ		ихъ	As
Dat.	намъ	вамъ		имъ	singular.
Instr.	нами	вами		ими	

The close similarity of some of these forms with the Latin pronouns will strike the student, e.g. *tibi* тебѣ, *sibi* себя.

Refer back to § 2 (3) and § 35 (1).

The possessives мой, твой, свой are declined like кой [v. § 41, I.], but accent the last syllable of the terminations uniformly; e.g. моё, мой, моёй, моего, моему, мой, etc.

нашъ our, and вашъ your, are declined alike, viz. :

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	All genders.
Nom.	нашъ	наше	наши
Acc.	N. or G.	наше	N. or G.
Gen.	нашего	нашей	нашихъ
Dat.	нашему	нашей	нашимъ
Instr.	нашимъ	нашею	нашими
Loc.	нашемъ	нашей	нашихъ

* Sounded yivó, yim, etc. † Commonly sounded like acc. её.

‡ Sounded like они.

Remarks.—(1) *свои* and *себя́* always refer back to the subject, *whatever the person*.

e.g. *Вы продали свою́ честь.*

You have sold your honour.

The 3rd person pronouns when they are *not* reflexive are the genitives *его́, ея́, ихъ*.

e.g. *Мнѣ сказали что купецъ уже́ про́далъ его́ товары.*

They told me that the merchant has already sold his (somebody else's) goods.

In vulgar speech *ихни* is used for *ихъ* their.

When *себя́* is attached to reflexive or passive verbs it takes the shortened form *ся* (*sounded са*) after consonants, *сь* after vowels.

In older Russian all the pronouns had abbreviated enclitic forms [cf. French "*moi*," "*me*," etc.], viz. *мя, ты, ся* for *меня, тебя, себя*; *ми, ти, си* for *мнѣ, тебѣ, себѣ*. Of these forms only *ся* survives.

e.g. *Въ отчаяніи плѣшникъ заколо́лъ себя́.*

In despair the prisoner stabbed himself (reflexive).

Стыжусь́ этого́.

I am ashamed of this (a reflexive verb).

Чашка разби́лась.

The cup was smashed (a passive).

(2) When *его́, ему́, ея́, ея́, ихъ, имъ, ими, ея́, ея́, ея́* are governed by *any* preposition, the letter *и* is prefixed to them.

e.g. *къ нему́* to him (sound *knemú*)

въ ней in her (sound *vnéi*)

проти́въ нихъ against them

у него́ with him [*chez lui*]
 съ́ ними́ with them (sound sními)
 бли́зь нея́ near her
 на́ него́ against him (sound nańivó)
 на́ немъ́ on it (sound nanyóm)

But егó рáди for his sake (the preposition follows)
 о́коло егó дóма near his house
 подъ́ ихъ́ влáстью under their power, etc.

In these two instances егó and ихъ́ are possessive pronouns, not governed by the preposition.

(3) As in the nouns and adjectives, the instrumental singular feminine -ою, -ею, is often shortened to -ой, -ей.

(4) As the verbs mostly have full personal inflections, the pronouns are not added except for emphasis.

e.g. кля́немъ́	we swear
слы́шу	I hear
понима́ешь?	do you understand?

VI. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are formed, as will be seen in the table in various ways, by prefixes and suffixes; cf. English who, whoever, whoso, whosoever.

(1) Prefixing **нѣ́-** accented.

(2) Adding **нибу́дь** (i.e. as it may be, from **бу́дь**, imperative of **бы́ть**). [v. § 57, II. and § 82, III.]

(3) Prefixing **кое́-** with a *distributive* sense.

e.g. гдѣ́-ни-бу́дь	somewhere or other
ко́е-гдѣ́	here and there
ко́е-кто́	various people (say)

But нѣ́которые́ some people (say)

(4) Adding *-то*. This suffix may be used with nouns as well, and gives an ironic or vague sense.

e.g. *человѣкъ-то* that kind of man
какой-то some sort or other
кто-то somebody you know who

VII. *The Negative Pronouns.*

These are formed by prefixing *ни-* *nor*.

When declined with prepositions the compound breaks up, and the preposition precedes the pronoun immediately.

e.g. *ни на когó* against no one
ни на какомъ мѣстѣ not on any place

In Russian a negative pronoun requires a negative verb, and, contrary to modern English practice, a double negative affirms the negative, and does not destroy it.

e.g. *Никогдá не было войны́ похóжей на тепѣрешнюю.*
 Never was there a war like the present war.

Я нигдѣ́ не видѣ́лъ ва́шего брáга.
 I could not see your brother anywhere.

But consult § 85.

VIII. *The Pronouns of Identity.*

(1) By affixing *-же* to any demonstrative, identity is implied.

e.g. *это́тъ-же* the same as this
тако́вой-же the same sort as that

(2) The words *самъ* and *са́мый*.

Самъ means "self"; as in English, I myself *я самъ*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	самъ	самó	самá	самѣ
Acc.	самогó	самó	самý†	N. or G.
Gen.	самогó*		самóй	самѣхъ
Dat.	самомý		самóй	самѣмъ
Instr.	самѣмъ		самóю	самѣми
Loc.	самóмъ		самóй	самѣхъ

As regards the soft plural самѣ, cf. § 40 (1) (3). It has been carried all through.

Самый means "the same," and is declined like a regular determinative adjective.

For its use to form the superlative, v. § 37 (3).

IX. *The Pronouns of Difference.*

The meanings of другóй and ино́й should be marked. другóй is "other," Latin *alius*, Greek ἄλλος, i.e. anything indeterminate, not what is being thought of. ино́й is "some other," Latin *ceteri*, Greek ἑτεροί, a more or less determinate object.

e.g. Нѣкоторые этого не мóгутъ понять.

Some cannot grasp this (fact).

Нѣкоторые подумáть что онъ сошелъ съ умá.

Some (*quidam*, certain people) may think he has gone mad.

Однѣ, однѣ [v. § 2 (3)], the plural of однѣ one, also means "some"; cf. English, the one says, the other . . .

So, too, иногда sometimes, from time to time (definite)

нѣкогда sometimes (uncertain)

когда-то at some time or other (indeterminate)

прóчие, прóчия means "the rest," "the remainder."

In the singular it occurs in the phrase:—

въ прóчемъ for the rest (of the argument, etc.).

* Sounded samogó. † Or samóe.

§ 42 (1). A TABLE OF RUSSIAN VERBS.

Conjugations.

I.

Infm. in -ТЬ, -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ
Pres. -А, -ЕШЬ, ... -АТЬ

tural
ots,
n. in
-ТЬ

Nasal
roots,
infin. in
-АТЬ, -ЮТЬ

Liquid
roots,
infin. in
-ЕПЬ, -ЮПЬ
-ЕЮПЬ

Dental
roots,
infin. in
-АТЬ, -ЮТЬ

Roots
in
-Б

Consonantal
roots with
suffixal "а"
in infin. and
past tense

II.

Infm. in -УТЬ
Pres. -И, -ЕШЬ, ... -ИТЬ

"Instantaneous" verbs
transitive,
-ИТЬ in past tense
stem in past tense
past part. pass. in -И

III.

Infm. in -ТЬ, -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ, -ЕТЬ
Pres. -Ю, -ЕШЬ, -ЮШЬ, ... -ЮТЬ

ORIGINAL

suffix before
ermination

and roots
ТЬ, -АЮТЬ

Vocalic
roots

Originals in
-ЮАТЬ, -ЕЮАТЬ

from nouns
in -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ

Inceptive
in -АТЬ

Derivatives in
-ЮАТЬ, -ЮЮАТЬ

Iteratives in
in -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ

Iteratives in
-ЮАТЬ, -ЮЮАТЬ

IV.

Infm. in -АТЬ, -ЮТЬ
Pres. -Ю, -ЮШЬ, -ИТЬ, ... -ИТЬ

ANOMALOUS

ORIGINAL

suffix before
ermination

and roots
ТЬ, -АЮТЬ

from nouns
in -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ

Inceptive
in -АТЬ

Derivatives in
-ЮАТЬ, -ЮЮАТЬ

Iteratives in
in -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ

Iteratives in
-ЮАТЬ, -ЮЮАТЬ

Mixed
conjugation

(absolute)

Same Different
root roots
etc. etc.

Redupli-
cative
etc.

a b v g m
Verbal noun and
past part. pass. in -И

ORIGINALS
DERIVATIVES
in -ИТЬ,
causative,
and others
in -АТЬ, -ЮТЬ, -ИТЬ,
-АТЬ

THE VERB.

§ 42 (2). PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Parts of the Russian Verb.

(i) The Russian verb presents little difficulty in comparison with many other modern languages. As was remarked in § 10, the forms of conjugation are very much reduced. They are :—

- (1) The infinitive.
- (2) A fully conjugated present tense, used in perfective verbs as the future.
- (3) A past tense consisting of an old participle in -лъ, with the personal pronouns, the copula, as usual in Russian, being omitted.
- (4) An imperative formed directly from the present tense.
- (5) A present “gerundive”* active in -я, and present participle in -ущій or -ящій.
- (6) A past participle active in -вшій, and a past gerundive* in -въ or -вшій.

These last-named forms are comparable with the predicatives and determinatives of the comparative, and originate in the same way. In older Russian *ши* was a feminine suffix of certain adjectives.

- (7) A present participle passive in -емый, and

- (8) A past participle passive in -тый or -ный.

The participles are all fully declined like ordinary adjectives.

- (9) A verbal noun in -ие.

The functions of these parts are more fully discussed in the Syntax, § 88 and 89.

* This so-called “gerundive” is merely an indeclinable participle, only used in agreement with the subject of the sentence.

The Deficiencies and the "Aspects" (вѣды).

(ii) Thus in Russian there is *no* conjunctive, only one conjugated tense, only one so-called past "tense" to express imperfects, preterites, perfects, pluperfects, etc. The future imperfective is formed by a compound tense, the infinitive with бѣ́у, one of the forms of бѣ́ть to be.

The obvious deficiencies are supplemented by the *aspects* of the Russian verb.

This subject cannot at present be approached; it may be briefly explained. [v. §§ 58 and 92.]

In English, "I do," "I am doing," "I was doing," "I did," "I used to do," "I *do* do," "I have done," all define the nature of the act; e.g. "I am doing" is the continuous conjugation; "I used to do" the habitual; "I have done" marks the completion or perfective aspect, and so on.

If the reader knows any Latin, and can imagine Latin reduced to one tense, but converting the other tenses into separate conjugations with new infinitives to match, he will understand what has happened in Russian. Old Russian had a far fuller complement of tenses, *imperfect*, *aoṛist*, *perfect*, etc. In modern Russian "aspects" replace the tenses and fulfil entirely the same object.

If Latin had evolved an infinitive *labōrābāre*, from the imperfect *labōrābam*, to express the habitual aspect, or *labōrāvire* (from *labōrāvī*) to express the completion or perfective, such separate by-forms of the verb would very nearly correspond with the Russian aspects. Such desideratives as *ēsūrīre*, from *ēsūrus*, future participle of

edō to eat, and the inceptives in *-esco*, might indeed in the parlance of Slavonic grammar be termed “aspects.”

To those who know a little Greek, the aspects will be even more familiar.

Thus the present forms *νοσεῖν* to be ill, *ἀποθνήσκω* to die, correspond to the imperfective *болѣть* or *хворать* and *умирать*; the aorist forms *ἐνόσησα*, *νοσήσαι*, *ἀποθανεῖν*, to the perfective *оболѣть*, *захворать*, *умерѣть*, to be taken ill, to die. E.g. *онъ оболѣлъ*, *захворалъ*, *ἐνόσησε*; but *онъ болѣлъ*, he was ill some time, *ἐνόσει*; *онъ умиралъ*, he lay a-dying, *ἀπέθνησκε*.

And just as *νοσήσω*, etc., is a future, not a present, but has the aorist stem, so *захвораю*, *умрѣю* signify I shall fall ill, etc. E.g. *умрѣтъ отъ чахотки* he will die of consumption.

How the Parts are Formed.

(iii) To know every form of the Russian verb, it is only necessary to learn the infinitive and 3rd person singular present. The rest follow.

Verbs Original and Derivative.

(iv) Verbs may be either original—i.e. unreferable to any simpler form—or derivative, from nouns or other verbs. E.g. in English “to fall,” “to write,” are original; “to book,” “to tabulate” derivative (from the noun “book,” and the Latin *tābula*, table). Or as in Latin, *dicere* to say, *iudicāre*, from *iūdex*, a judge.

Derivatives, verbs which mostly represent complex ideas, greatly outnumber the primary verbs ; in frequency of use they are less, as the simpler relations have to be constantly re-stated.

In Latin derivative verbs have a vocalic stem, e.g. *iudicā-re*, *monē-re*, *audī-re*.^{*} So, too, in Russian дѹма thought, дѹмать to think ; зелёный green, зеленѣть to become green ; живъ alive, жить to live ("original"), оживѣть to revive, from живѡй alive.

The derivative verbs being the more numerous, and the newest and easiest formations, tend to set the model, and become the "regular" verbs.

The primary verbs, being the most employed and the most worn down in daily use, also being drawn from more ancient sources, conserve obsolete forms, and are sometimes called "irregular"—arbitrarily and inaccurately. Actually Russian has next to no verbs that can be really termed anomalous.

Further, many "original" or "primary" verbs have consonantal stems or roots, e.g. Latin *reg-ere* to rule, *dīc-ere* to say.

§ 43. THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The Russian infinitive ends in -ть and is preceded by the root in original verbs, by the stem in derivative verbs.

In some verbs -ті́ accented survived, e.g. нес-ті́ to carry.

^{*} Russian verbs in -ѣть, -ѣю, -ать, -аю, -ять, -ю may be compared with the Latin -eo, -[a]o, -io, whilst the Russian first conjugation consists of root-verbs, like the Latin third.

In some few guttural stems, the guttural and -тъ coalesce into -чь, e.g. печь to bake, for пек-тъ; жечь to burn, for жег-тъ.

In some dental roots, the dental and -тъ coalesce into -сть, e.g. вести to lead, for вед-тъ; плести to pleat, for плет-тъ.

In "original" vocalic stems -тъ follows the root, e.g. зна-тъ to know.

Sometimes a consonant is extruded, e.g. жить to live, for жив-тъ.

All derivative stems are vocalic, e.g. желá-тъ to wish.

§ 44. THE FORMS DERIVED FROM THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The -тъ termination must be removed, and the stem or root stripped.

- (1) By adding -нiе a verbal noun is formed; e.g. колебáть to rock, колебáнiе; вѣять to blow, вѣянiе.
- (2) By adding -лъ the past tense is formed; e.g. я колебáлъ I rocked.*
- (3) By adding -я to the present stem the present "gerundive" дѣла-тъ; e.g. дѣлая doing.

* In consonantal stems this -лъ is dropped in the masculine singular, restored in the other inflections.

E.g. теперь (root твр) to ~~тврѣ~~, past tense тѣрѣ, тѣрла (fem.), etc.
 лечь (root лер) to lie down, past tense лѣгѣ, легла (fem.), etc.
 -речь (root рек) to speak, past tense рѣкѣ, рекла (fem.), etc.

But cf. for this last the Polish *rzeka*, and *Čech* *řekl*.

- (4) By adding -ущій, -ющій to the present stem the present participle; e.g. имѣющій possessing (имѣ-ть);* -ящій is added with *derivative* verbs in -ить: пис-а-ть, пишущій.
- (5) By adding -въ or -вши the past gerundive; e.g. пис-а-ть to write, писа́въ, писа́вши,† and by adding -вший the past participle active; e.g. веселѣ-ть to enliven, веселѣ-вший.
- (6) By adding -емый or -имый the present participle passive; e.g. купи́-ть to buy, купи́мый; зна-ть to know, зна́емый.

An easier rule is to form this from the 1st person plural present купи́мъ, зна́емъ.

- (7) A perfect participle passive in т or н. т is only used in a very few verbs of certain types; e.g. двѣнуть to move, двѣнутый, посла́ть to send, по́сланный sent.

This participle is accented like the 2nd person singular present of variable verbs.

All participles are fully declined as predicatives and determinatives.

Before proceeding to learn the verbs, the student must be sure he knows the phonetic rules in §§ 2, 5, 6, 8, 9.

It will be observed that all the forms derived from the infinitive are accented like the infinitive. There are scarcely any exceptions to this rule.

* In older Russian the terminations were -учи, -ячи gerundive, -учій, -ячій participle. Some of the latter survive as adjectives, e.g. могу́чій powerful (мочь), горя́чій (горѣть) hot, сидя́чій sedentary. Буду́чи is still used as the gerundive present of быть; буду́щій, the regular form, means "future."

† In consonantal roots the termination is -шии, e.g. нести́ to carry, нести́и, не́сшии.

§ 45. THE FORMATIONS FROM THE 1ST PERSON SINGULAR PRESENT.

The *imperative* is formed from the 1st person singular present by substituting *й, ь* or *и* for *у* or *ю*.

The addition of *-те* makes this imperative form plural.

The same *-те* added to the 1st person plural makes a *hortative* mood "let us do."

The accentuation is that of the present tense.

e.g. *бúду* I shall be, *бúдь, бúдьте, бúдем-те*
веселю́ I enliven, *весе́й, весе́йте*

There are a very few exceptions to this general rule, viz. *бить* to beat [v. § 52 (2) *β*], *дать* to give [v. § 57, III.], *стоять* to stand [v. § 52 (3)], *боя́ться* to fear [v. § 52 (3)], *сме́яться* to laugh [v. § 52 (3)], *крыть** to cover [v. § 52 (2) *ε*].

e.g. *внѣмлю́* I take, *внѣмлѣ́* *бѣю́* I beat, *бѣй*
боя́ю I fear, *боя́й-ся* *мо́юсь* I wash, *моѣ́-ся*

§ 46. THE ACCENTUATION OF THE VERB.

I. All the forms derived from the infinitive [v. § 44] have a fixed accent, that of the infinitive.

II. Except in a very few verbs the imperative has the accent of the 1st person singular present.

III. Verbs which uniformly accent the termination or the stem in every part are said to have a fixed

* The exception in verbs in *-ять* is apparent only: if the *и* be taken as a contraction of *-оé* or *у*, i.e. as equivalent to *-моёръ*.

accent. Only a few derivatives and most of the original verbs have a variable accent.

IV. The only constant variations in the accentuation of the verb are in the present tense and the past participle passive, and forms derived from the present stem.

V. Every verb which has an infinitive of two syllables or more, and is not accented on the ultimate, has a fixed accent.

VI. In dissyllabic verbs accented on the ultimate in the infinitive, the accent *may* vary on certain inflections.

VII. A verb with a variable accent accents the infinitive and 1st person singular present alike, the 2nd and 3rd persons singular, the 1st and 2nd plural, on the penultimate; the 3rd person plural either on the ultimate or penultimate, generally the latter.

VIII. As a rule, the past participle passive has the secondary accent when the accent is variable.*

IX. Russian verbs, original or derivative, with fixed or variable accents, are divided into four conjugations, which differ only very superficially and slightly.

e.g. **вѣ́дѣть** to see (rule V.).

вѣ́жу	вѣ́димъ
вѣ́дишь	вѣ́дите
вѣ́дитъ	вѣ́дятъ

пи́сать to write (rule VI.).

пи́шѹ	пи́шемъ
пи́шешь	пи́шете
пи́шетъ	пи́шутъ

* E.g. **воспита́тъ** educate, **воспи́танный**; **пи́сать** write, **пи́шетъ**, **пи́санный**.

ска́зать to tell (rule VI.).

скажѹ́	ска́жемъ
ска́жешь	ска́жете
ска́жетъ	ска́жутъ

не́сти to carry (invariable) (rule VI.).

несѹ́	несѐмъ
несѣ́шь	несѣ́те [v. § 9 (7) (1)]
несѣ́тъ	несѹ́тъ

§ 47. EXAMPLES OF THE COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF TWO DERIVATIVE VERBS WITH FIXED ACCENTS.

<i>Infinitive :</i>	жела́-ть to wish	вѣ́ри-ть to believe
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	жела́нiе	[вѣ́ренiе] *
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	жела́я	вѣ́ря
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	жела́ющiй	вѣ́рящiй
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	жела́въ, жела́вши	вѣ́ривъ, вѣ́ривши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	жела́вший	вѣ́рившiй
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	жела́емый	вѣ́римый †
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	жела́нный	-вѣ́ренный
<i>Present :</i>	я жела́ю	вѣ́рю
	ты жела́ешь	вѣ́ришь
о́нъ, о́на, о́но	жела́етъ	вѣ́ритъ
	мы жела́емъ	вѣ́римъ
	вы жела́ете	вѣ́рите
о́ни, о́нѣ	жела́ютъ	вѣ́рятъ
<i>Past :</i>	я, ты жела́лъ, жела́ла	вѣ́рилъ, вѣ́рила
о́нъ, о́на, о́но	{ жела́лъ, жела́ла, жела́ло вѣ́рилъ, вѣ́рила, вѣ́рило	
	мы, вы, о́ни, о́нѣ жела́ли, вѣ́рили	

* Replaced by вѣ́рованiе, from вѣ́ровать.

† Rare.

<i>Future:</i>	бѹду бѹдешь бѹдетъ	} желать вѣрить	бѹдемъ бѹдете бѹдутъ	} желать вѣрить
----------------	--------------------------	--------------------	----------------------------	--------------------

<i>Imperative:</i>	2nd pers. sing.	желай	вѣрь
	2nd pers. pl.	желайте	вѣрьте

Unless specially mentioned, all the parts of the Russian verb are simply and regularly formed as in these two paradigms.

§ 48. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

Some Phonetic Rules.

Before entering on this section, reperuse § 5, § 6, § 8, § 9.

Remember.—Words in -е-р-, -ор-, -е-л-, -ол-, though now dissyllables, represent monosyllabic roots in -р-, -ра-, -л-, -ла-.

Remember—

г + е makes же г + и makes жи г + ю makes жу
And similarly with к and х (changing to ч and ш).

Remember—

т + ю makes in Russian чѹ, in Church Slavonic шѹ.

д + ю makes in Russian жу, in Church Slavonic жѹ.

т + я can make in Russian ча, and in Church Slavonic шча or remain.

т + е or и can make че, чи or remain.

д + е or и can make же, жи or remain.

д + я can make жа or remain.

When the dental remains, it is due to the influence of the written language.

Remember—к, г + -тъ are changed to -чъ; but т or д + тѣ to -сѣ, and the ending -сѣ is extended to other roots by false analogy.

Remember—з + я becomes жа or remains.

с + я becomes ша or remains.

с + ю becomes шу

з + ю becomes жу

ст + ю becomes шу

Remember.—The euphonic insertion of *я* after labial roots before *ю*, and *-енный*.

Before other soft vowels *с*, *з* and *ст* as a rule are merely softened in pronunciation, not changed in quality. [v. § 5 (4).]

§ 49. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

At the head of § 42 there is printed a scheme of the four conjugations.

The first conjugation forms its present in *-у*, *-ешь*, *-етъ*, *-емъ*, *-ете*, *-утъ*, added directly on to the root, without any intermediate vowel.

It comprises the following classes:—

I. *Guttural Roots*.—Infinitive in *-чь*; e.g. печь to bake, лечь to lie down, мочь to be able.

e.g. печь to bake (root пек)	жечь to burn (root жгъ)
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	пёкшій жёгшій
<i>Gerundive</i> :	печа́ жёгши
<i>Present part. act.</i> :	пекúщій жгúщій
<i>Past part. pass.</i> :	печёнпый жжёнпый
<i>Present</i> :	пекú печёмъ жгу жжёмъ
	печёшь печёте жжёшь жжёте
	печётъ пекúтъ жжётъ жгутъ
<i>Past</i> :	пёкъ, пекла́, пекло́, пекли́ ; жёгъ, жгла́, жгло́, жгли́
<i>Imperative</i> :	пекí ; жги

Similarly :—

речь to speak (root *pek*)—this verb is obsolete.

лечь to lie down (irregular present stem *лягу*,

ляжешь, лягутъ; but past лёгъ, легла, легло,

легли); imperative лягъ

мочь to be able (root *mor*)

Note.—мочь makes могу́, можешь, можетъ, можемъ, можете, могутъ; imperative могу́, etc.

Similarly :—

вечь to draw (root *влек*)

сѣчь to cut (root *сѣк*)

беречь to shelter (root *берег*, present берёгу́,

бережёшь . . . берёгутъ, past берёгъ,

берегла́, берегло́, берегли́)

стеречь to guard (root *стерег*, like беречь)

стричься to have the hair cut (root *стриг*)

течь to flow (root *тек*)

запрячь to yoke (root *пряг*: note the past

запрягъ, sounded пры́жокъ, пры́гла́, -ло́, -ли́)

волочь to drag (root *волок*)

Practically all of these have a fixed accent on the termination.

II. *Nasal Roots.*—Infinitive in -ять (-ать after ж, ч, etc.).

Remember.—The Russian я represents the Old Slav *ę* (French *ain*, *in*, in *fain*, *fin*); and the nasal lost in some forms is restored in fuller inflections; cf. время́, времени́. [v. § 2 (2).]

e.g. начать́ to begin (root *чнь*); cf. imperfective
начина́ть

* Note past participle passive острѣженный́.

The present gerundive and participle *начая* and *начая́ющій* do not exist, as the verb is perfective and has no present tense; only the past active participles *начавъ*, *начавшій*.

But note *past part. pass.* *начатый*, or *начато́й*.

Present (with future meaning):—

начу́	начнѣмъ
начнѣшь	начнѣте
начнѣтъ	начну́тъ

Past: *началъ*, *начала́*, *нача́ло*, *нача́ли*

Imperative: *начи́*

Verbs of this class take the past passive participle in т, and mostly throw the accent back on the past tense in -лъ and the participle in т. Otherwise the accent is always on the termination.

Such are:—*жать* (*жму*) to press (root *жѣм*); *жать* (*жну*) to reap (root *жѣн*), *чать* (root *чѣн*); only used in compounds, e.g. *начина́тъ* begin, *сочиня́тъ* compose; *пять* (*пну*, root *пѣн*), mostly used in compounds, e.g. *распѣ́тъ* to crucify.

Verbs of this class take the verbal substantive in -тіе (as also do the liquid roots, v. infra).

e.g. *распѣ́тіе* the crucifixion

поня́тіе the meaning (of a passage)

There is one other such verb (with a nasal root) of great consequence, only used in compounds, viz. *-ять* (root *ем*, Latin *emere*) to take.

In compounds, as with the 3rd person pronoun [v. § 41, V. (2)], *и* is prefixed to the root.

e.g. наня́ть to hire, приня́ть accept, поня́ть to understand, заня́ть to occupy (oneself) or to lend, взять to take up, сня́ть to take away ; all in the imperfective, нанима́ть, принима́ть, etc. ; all having a past participle passive, наня́тъ, заня́тъ, etc.

The present restores the original root -емъ.

e.g. пайму́, найме́шь, etc., пойму́, возьму́, займу́, etc.

There also exists a perfective present form in ёмлю, внёмлю, внёмлешь, conjugated like a verb with fixed accent of the third conjugation, but with an imperative accented внемли́.

III. *Sibilant Roots.*

These are :—

нести́ to carry (root нес)

вести́ to drive (e.g. in a carriage) (root вез)

грызть to gnaw (root грыз)

лѣзть to climb (root лѣз)

ползти́ to creep (root полз)

пасты́ to graze (transitive) (root паст)

Example :—

Infinitive : везти́

Gerundive present : вези́

Participle present : везу́щий

Gerundive past : вёзши

Past participle passive : везённый

Verbal, derived from imperfective : -воже́ние

Present : везу́, везёшь, etc.

Past : вёзъ, везла́, -ло́, -ли́

Imperative : вези́

Notic.—лѣзть has a present лѣзу́, лѣзешь, etc., лѣзутъ ; imperative лѣзь.

IV. *Roots in Liquids*: -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-.

- (1) e.g. терѣть to rub (root тѣр, imperf. тира́ть)
 -мерѣть to die (root мѣр, imperf. -мира́ть)
 перѣть to prop (root пѣр, imperf. пира́ть)

Example:—

Infinitive: терѣть

Verbal: трѣніе*

Past part. pass.: тѣръ, like the roots in nasals

Present gerundive act.: трѹщи

Present part. act.: трѹщій

Past part. act.: тѣртыи

Present: трѹ, трѣшь, трѣтъ, трѣмъ, трѣте, трѹтъ

Past: тѣръ, тѣрла, -ло, -ли

Like the roots in nasals, the verbal noun and past participle passive are formed with т, and the past tense and past participle passive throw the accent back on to the particle with which they are compounded.

e.g. ўмерѣ, умерла́, ўмерло, ўмерли (умерѣть)

So, too, подперѣ (but -пѣръ) to prop.

- (2) борѣть to fight† полѣть to weed
 порѣть to rend молѣть to grind
 колѣть to pierce

колѣть to pierce.

Present part. act.: колѹщій

Past part. act.: колѣвшій

Verbal noun: колѣтье

Past part. pass.: колѣтъ

Present part. pass.: колѣмый

Present (following the third conjugation): колю́,
 колѣшь, колѣтъ, колѣмъ, колѣте, колѹтъ

Past: колѣлъ, колѣла, колѣло, колѣли

* трѣіе is disused.

† Used with -ся, omitted in example,

These five verbs differ slightly from the verbs in -ерѣть, -елѣть.

(a) The present as in the third conjugation.

(β) A uniformly variable accent. [v. § 46.]

(γ) A regular vocalic past tense with fixed accent.

(δ) молотъ is *irregular* in forming its present: мелю, мѣлешь, мѣлеть, мѣлемъ, мѣлете, мѣлютъ, as though from an infinitive мелѣть.

V *Roots in Dentals.*

e.g. вестіи to lead (root вед)

гнестіи to press (root гнец)

цвѣстіи to bloom (root цвѣт), but v. § 9 (7) (3)

класть to lay (root клад)

красть to steal (root крад)

(крадѹ, краденый)

пасть to fall (root пад)

прять to spin (root пряд)

сѣсть to sit (сѣду, сѣдешь)

растіи to grow (root раст: растѹ, etc.; past tense росъ)

-чить to read (root чьт)

идти to go (root ьд)

and by false analogy—

скрестъ to scrape (root скреб: скребѹ, скребѣшь—скрёбъ)

грестъ to row (root греб: гребѹ, гребѣшь, грёбъ)

клясть to swear (root клян: клянѹ, клянѣшь—кляль)

These verbs form the past in лъ added on to the vowel of the infinitive, the real root being disregarded.

e.g. вѣль, велá, велó, веліи

So гнѣль, цвѣль, клаль

Exceptions, грестъ and скрестъ: грѣбъ, грѣблѣ, грѣблѣи; скрѣбъ, скрѣблѣ, скрѣблѣи; and растѣи (root раст), растѣи, растѣишь, росъ -ѣ, -лѣ, -лѣи, -лѣи.

честь and идѣи follow slightly different rules.

Present : идѣи (in compounds йду, e.g. найду I shall find, etc.), идѣишь, идѣи, идѣишь, идѣи, идѣишь, идѣи

Past (from root шед) : шѣи, шлѣ, шлѣи

Participles and gerundives : идѣи, идѣищѣи, шѣишѣи

честь (only used in compounds, root чѣи)

Present : чѣи, чѣишь, чѣишь

Past : -чѣи, -члѣ, -члѣи

Verbal noun : -чѣиѣи

Participles and gerundives : -чѣи, -чѣищѣи, -чѣишѣи, -чѣишѣи

сѣи has a present сѣи accented uniformly like лечѣи, лѣи. красть accents the present крадѣи, крадѣишь, etc.

With these variations, one example will explain all these verbs.

красть to steal

Present gerundive active : крадѣи

Present participle active : крадѣищѣи

Past participle active : крадѣишѣи

Past participle passive : крадѣи, крадѣишѣи

Present : крадѣи, -ѣишь, -ѣи, -ѣи, -ѣи, -ѣи

Imperative : крадѣи

All these forms use the real root of the verb in the present forms.

Past : крадѣи, крадѣи, крадѣи, крадѣи

So, too, сѣи, сѣи, сѣи, сѣи

For the accentuation of the past tense in its inflections, as a rule, monosyllables derived from verbs which accent the terminations throw the accent forward.

e.g. лёгъ, легла́, легло́, легли́

палъ* (пасть) and сѣлъ (сѣсть) have a fixed accent, influenced by the derivative parts from verbs in -ать and -ѣть.

Forms such as вѣлъ, плѣлъ (вести́, плести́) throw the accent forward like лёгъ, росъ; so, too, клялъ (клясть, клянý), кралъ (красть).

Except in original verbs, mostly monosyllabic, the past tense, or rather the participle in -л, never shifts the accent.

VI. *Roots in в.* These are three in number.

жить to live

плыть to swim

слыть to have a reputation of (Greek κλύειν)

e.g. онъ слывѣтъ мýдрымъ he is thought wise.

One example illustrates all three.

жить to live

Verbal noun: жити́е and житьё

Past participle passive: -жи́тый

Gerundive present active: живи́

Participle present active: живу́щий (but older form, used adjectivally, живу́чий)

Gerundive past active: жи́вши, живѣ

Participle past active: жи́вшивъ

Present: живу́, живёшь . . . живу́тъ

Past: жилъ, жила́, жи́ло, жи́ли

* Cf. Polish padł.

VII. *Consonantal roots with a suffixal vowel a.*

- e.g. **врать** to speak at random, or lie
лгать to lie (tell falsehoods)
брать to take (iterative -**бирáть**)
ждать to wait (iterative -**жди́ть**)
рвать to tear
спать to sleep
ржать to neigh
драть to tear (present **деру́**)
звать to call (present **зову́**)

Examples:—

	рвать to tear	драть to tear
<i>Verbal noun:</i>	рва́ние	дра́ньё *
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	рванъ	драгъ
<i>Gerundive pres. act.:</i>	рвя́	деря́
<i>Participle pres. act.:</i>	рву́щий	деру́щий
<i>Past part. act.:</i>	рва́вший	дра́вший
<i>Present:</i>	рву, рве́шь, рве́тъ, рвёмъ, рвете, рвуть	деру́, дере́шь, дерётъ, дерёмъ, дерете, дерутъ
<i>Past:</i>	рвалъ, рва́ла, рва́ло, рва́ли	драгъ, дра́ла, дра́ло, дра́ли
So, too, лгать , лгу , лжешь , etc.		So, too, брать , беру́ ; звать, зову́

There are many similar forms in the third conjugation, monosyllabic and dissyllabic, e.g. **знать** to know, **спать** to sleep, **писать** to write. [v. § 51 (3).]

* Irregular accentuation.

§ 50. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The first conjugation consists of consonantal roots attached directly to the terminations. This involves phonological difficulties, and slightly complicates the accentuation and appearance of the forms.

The second conjugation is composed of roots with a vocalic suffix, and thus greater apparent regularity is secured.

The marks of the second conjugation are: infinitive, -и́ть; present, -и́, -и́шь, -и́тъ, -и́мъ, -и́те, -и́тъ, or, accented, -и́ѣ, -и́еши, -и́етъ, -и́емъ, -и́ете, -и́ѣтъ.

The present forms are therefore identical with those of the first conjugation, save for the prefixing of the и.

This conjugation falls under two main heads, which must be carefully distinguished.

I. Perfective verbs conserving the “и́” suffix throughout all the forms of verb, and mostly accented like the imperfective verb from which they are derived. These verbs [v. § 59, I. (2)] as perfectives have a peculiar meaning of instantaneity—of doing an action once and suddenly. The suffixal vowel of the imperfective verb is dropped, and sometimes the last consonant of the root as well, to avoid heavy combinations of the consonants.

e.g. вертѣ́тъ	to turn	верну́тъ
стега́тъ	to quilt	стегну́тъ
порха́тъ	to flutter	порхну́тъ
маха́тъ	to wave	махну́тъ
двига́тъ	to move	двину́тъ

e.g. дѣргать	to pull	дѣрнуть
тѣгать	to touch	тѣгнуть
лѣпать	to split	лѣпнуть
тонѣть	to sink	тонѣть* to drown
тягивать	to drag	тянѣть* to pull
касаться	to concern	каснѣться
шептѣть	to whisper	шепнѣть

There are some exceptions to this rule of accentuation.

e.g. глядѣть	to look at	гланѣть
кидѣть	to leave	кинѣть
чѣрпать	to take in water (of a ship)	черпнѣть
зѣять	to gape	-зѣнѣть
кричѣть	to cry	крикнѣть

Note, however, compounds in гланѣть have a *variable* accent.

e.g. заглянѣть, заглянѣ, заглянѣшь, etc.

II. Verbs in -нѣть, imperfective and intransitive.

In the past tense the simple root is used, with no suffixal vowel between the last consonant and лѣ, which latter, as in the first conjugation, drops in the masculine singular.

These verbs are distinguished from ordinary imperfectives by having the special *inchoative* meaning of "becoming."

* With variable accent тонѣшь, тѣнѣшь, тѣнутый.

These verbs are nearly all accented on the penultimate.

e.g. слѣпнуть to become blind
 сохнуть to become dry
 чахнуть to die gradually, or wither
 стыннуть to cool
 гнѣнуть (гнибать) to decay
 тихнуть to become quiet

In this class a few verbs have the past tense in -нулъ.

e.g. липнуть to adhere, липнулъ; -снуть (mostly used in compounds, e.g. заснуть, проснуть) to sleep, -снулъ (as the perfective of засыпать, etc.)

The present runs -сну, -снёшь . . . снутъ.*

III. Examples of conjugation in both varieties.

	Perfective and Transitive. кѣнуть to cast off	Imperf. and Intrans. гнѣнуть to decay
<i>Infinitive :</i>	кѣнуть	гнѣнуть
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	(кѣнүте)	none
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	кѣнутыи (in т not н)	none
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	none	гнѣнущій
<i>Present gerundive act. :</i>	none	гнѣнущи
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	кѣнувши	гнѣнувши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	кѣнувшій	гнѣнувшій
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	none	none
<i>Present :</i>	кѣну, кѣнешь, кѣнетъ, кѣнемъ, кѣнете, кѣнутъ	гнѣну, гнѣнешь, гнѣнетъ, гнѣнемъ, гнѣнете, гнѣнутъ
<i>Past :</i>	кѣнулъ, кѣнула, кѣнуло, кѣнули	гнибъ, гнибла гнибло, гнили
<i>Imperative :</i>	кинь	гнибъ

* Cf. the noun сонъ, сна.

§ 51. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Preliminary.

The characteristic of this conjugation is the present in -ю, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ.

This conjugation comprises a number of primary original verbs, mostly monosyllables, and vocalic roots (thereby distinct from those in the first conjugation); a few consonantal roots also exist.

It comprises the enormous and increasing number of regular derivatives in -ѣтъ; the derivative verbs in -ать and -ять, which is the commonest form, and the large class of verbs in -овать, -евать, together with the iteratives in -ывать, -павать.

Thus, this conjugation perhaps embraces the majority of Russian verbs.

An example of a simple regular verb in -ать is to be found at § 47.

Verbs in -ѣтъ are precisely the same, e.g. *зеле^нѣтъ* to become green, the stem *зеле^нѣ-* being substituted for the stem *жел^ѣ-*.

§ 52. THE ORIGINAL VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Those in which the terminations are directly affixed to the root.

(1) *Liquid roots in -юлють, -орють.*

These have been explained in § 49, IV. (2).

(2) *Vocalic roots*.—(a) Roots in а.

e.g. зна-ть to know

This is conjugated exactly like жёлать [v. § 47].

So, too, сия-ть to shine (сияю).

(β) Roots in и.

e.g. бить to beat	лечь to flow	шить to sew
вить to wind	брить to shave	гнить to rot

All of these form the *past participle passive* in -тъ.

e.g. битъ, вить, лить, etc.

The *verbal nouns* are formed either in -іе or -іеіе.

e.g. битіе, бііеіе, гнііеіе, etc.

The present tense is formed:—

бую, бьёшь, бьётъ, бьёмъ, бьёте, бьютъ

So, too, шью, гнию, лью, вью, etc.

But брить, брёю, брёешь, брёетъ, брёемъ, брёете, брёютъ.

The other forms present no variance; e.g. быя, быющій, бившій, билъ (била, било, били), бей (imperative). [v. § 45.]

(γ) Roots in у.

e.g. дуть to blow обуть to put on [shoes]

These are quite regular, the root being ду, обь.

e.g. дую, дуешь . . . дуютъ, дуи
дуя, дующій, дувшій, дуль

The verbal noun and past participle passive are in т, дутьё, обутьіе, дуть, обуть.

(δ) Roots in ѣ.

смѣть to dare*	грѣть to warm
успѣть to succeed	

* Not to be confused with смѣяться laugh. [v. § 52, I. (β).]

There are very few original verbs of this type; they are all regularly conjugated like the derivatives in -ѣть, or like желáю [v. § 47], substituting the root in ѣ for желá-.

They are all accented throughout on the root-vowel ѣ; e.g. смѣю, грѣѣть, успѣѣмъ. For -дѣть dress, v. § 57, II.

For пѣть, v. following sub-section (ε).

(ε) Verbs in -ыть.

[For быть to be, v. § 57, II. This verb is anomalous, forming its parts—as in nearly all Indo-European languages—out of several separate roots.]

e.g. крыть to cover, мыть to wash, выть to howl, рыть to dig, ныть to be injured, and пѣть to sing, which accents the termination; пою, поёшь, поёть, поёмъ, поёте, пою́тъ.

ы fully accented is sounded almost as a diphthong *ii*, and крыть may be taken as an abbreviated form of крёѣть. One example will illustrate them all.

Infinitive: крыть

Verbal noun: крёѣтiе*

Past participle pass.: крыть*

Past participle act.: крёѣвшiй

Past gerundive act.: крёѣвъ, крёѣвши

Past: крёѣлъ, крёѣла, крёѣло, крёѣли

Present: крёѣю, крёѣешь, крёѣѣтъ, крёѣемъ, крёѣете, крёѣю́тъ

Present participle pass.: крёѣемый

Imperative: крёѣй, крёѣйте

* From §§ 49 I., II., IV., VI., § 50, § 52, I. (2) (3) (γ) (ε), it will be seen that most of the primitive root-verbs, consonantal and vocalic, have the past participle passive in т and not in н.

II. Verbs with an infinitive in -ать, -ять; but affixing the root directly on to the terminations of the present tense.

Of these verbs there is an immense number. Some instances can be given. Otherwise they are conjugated like желáю or дѣлаю.

		Present.	Accentuation.
та́ять	to thaw	та́ю	fixed
ла́ять	to bark	ла́ю	"
ка́пать	to trickle	ка́плю (ка́паю)	"
ма́зать	to anoint	ма́жу	"
рѣ́зать	to cut	рѣ́жу	"
чу́ять	to hear	чу́ю	"
прѣ́тать	to hide	прѣ́чу	"
вѣ́ять	to wave	вѣ́ю	"
ора́ть	to plough	ору́	"
надѣ́яться	to hope	надѣ́юсь	"
пла́кать	to weep	пла́чу	"
дви́гать	to move	дви́жу (дви́гаю)	"
писа́ть	to write	пиш́у, but пишешь, variable пишутъ, and писанный	
смѣ́яться	to laugh	смѣ́юсь	invariable
вяза́ть	to bind	вяза́ю	variable
дрема́ть	to sleep	дрема́ю	"
шепта́ть	to whisper	шепча́ю	"
сказа́ть	to say	сказа́ю	"
лепетáть	to stammer	лепетáю	"

Nearly all the verbs of this class accented on the last syllable have a shifting accent, like that of писа́ть.

Notice.—(1) стена́ть, to groan, has mixed forms: стена́ю, стена́ешь, etc., or стоню́, стонёшь, etc.; past стена́лъ or стона́лъ.

- (2) колебáть to rock, колебóлю or колебáю, колеблешь or колебáешь, etc.
- (3) слать to send, шлю, шлешь, шлётъ, шлёте, шлють (imperfective -сылáть).
- (4) стлать to spread, стелю́, стелешь, etc., стелю́тъ; past стлалъ, стлала́, стлало́, стлали́.
- (5) дыхáть to breathe, дышú, ды́шешь, ды́шутъ or дыхáю, дыхáешь, etc., in compounds.
- (6) страдáть to suffer, стра́жду or страдáю in the 1st person; otherwise страдáю, страдáешь, etc. стра́жду is a Church Slavonic form, the true Russian would have been стра́жу.

§ 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The Derivative Verbs.

There are three forms of derivatives in the third conjugation: -

(1) With the infinitive in -ать or -ять, and stem in -а-, -я-, mostly derived from nouns, and conserving fixedly the accent of the noun. These are mostly transitive.

e.g. дѣло thing	дѣлать to do
рабóта work	работáть to work
печáть printing	печáтать to print
любѣзникъ courtier	любѣзничáть to court

There are *very* few exceptions to this rule of the uniformity of accentuation of noun and verb.

e.g. хворýи ill	хворáть to be ill
ласка affection	ласкáть to dandle

(2) With the infinitive in -ѣть *accented*, intransitive, and with an inceptive and imperfective meaning.

e.g. зеленѣть	to become green	(зелѣный)
богатѣть	to become rich	(богáтый)
желтѣть	to become yellow	(желтýй)
слабѣть	to become weak	(слабýй)
мужáть	to become a man	(мужъ)

Remember—ж, ш, ч, щ + ѣ in Russian make жа, ша, ча, ща. [v. §§ 37 and 2 (3).]

These derivatives in -ѣть are all oxytone. Except:—

(a) A few words, e.g. угрюмый severe, угрюмѣть.

(β) In accordance with the same principle of conserving the accent of the noun or adjective all inceptives in -ѣть, from adjectives in -авый, -ивый, -овый, -атый, retain the adjectival accent.

e.g. кровавѣть	to become bloody
милостивѣть	to become merciful
космáть	to become shaggy
безлюдѣть	to be depopulated (безъ людéй)
обезпáмáть	to lose memory (безъ пáмáти)

For full model of conjugation of these derivatives, all of which have a fixed accent, v. § 47, желáть.

(3) I. *Derivatives in -овать, -евать, e.g. чýвствовать from чýвство feeling.*

<i>Infinitive :</i>	чýвствовать	горевáть
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	чýвствовáние	горевáние
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	—	—
<i>„, ger. and part. act. :</i>	чýвствовавший, -ши	горевáвший, -ши
<i>Past :</i>	чýвствова́ль	горевáль
<i>Present :</i>	чýвствую, -ешь, etc.	горю́ю, -ешь, etc.
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	чýвствующ́ий	горю́ющий
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	чýвствуя	горю́я
<i>Imperative :</i>	чýвствуй	горю́й

The accent on these derivatives is fixed, mostly, on the syllable accented in the noun or adjective from which they are derived. But in the present, and those forms derived from it, -ов, -ев changes to -у, which is accented, when the infinitive is oxytone.

e.g. вѣра, вѣровать to believe
 жертва, жертву, жертвовать to sacrifice
 бесѣда, бесѣдовать to converse
 варваръ, варварствовать to be barbarous
 существо́ а "being," существова́ть to exist
 вой-на́, воева́ть to war

The foreign loan-words in -ировать. These if quadrisyllabic accent ирова́ть; if pentasyllabic, or beyond, ирова́ть.

e.g. акклиматизи́ровать to acclimatize
 [but характери́зировать to characterize]
 аплоди́ровать to applaud
 цивили́зовать to civilize, etc.

But notice—здоровы́й healthy, здорова́ться; здоро́ваюсь to greet. This is really a derivative from the adjective. [v. § 53 (1).]

II. There are a few *original* verbs in -овать, -евать, which really belong to § 52; but, as they are exactly like the derivatives, may be more conveniently treated here.

They all accent in the same way:—

e.g. кова́ть	to forge	ку́ю, куёшь	fixed accent
основа́ть	to found	осну́ю, оснуёшь	„ „
сова́ть	to thrust	су́ю	„ „
клева́ть	to nibble	кля́ю	„ „
жева́ть	to chew	жу́ю	„ „

(4) *Iteratives* in -áть, -я́ть.

There is one aspect of the Russian called iterative or frequentative, signifying habitual or repeated action.

One form of this is an inflection in -áть, -я́ть, -áю, -я́ю.

e.g. двíгáть to move, perfective двíжy [v. § 52 (3)]

двигáть to move, iterative двигáю

начáть to begin, perfective начнý [v. § 49 (2)]

начинáть to begin, imperfective

Other examples will be given in the section on the aspects. [v. § 59 (4).]

The conjugation is regular, like желаю́ [v. § 47].

(5) *Iteratives* in -ывать, -ивать.

(a) Where the root of the verb is vocalic, in -вáть.

e.g. да́ть	to give	дава́ть
бы́ть	to be	бывáть
ста́ть	to become	-става́ть
обу́ться	to be shod (perf.)	обува́ться

(β) Where the verb is dissyllabic, or the root consonantal in -ывáть, -ивáть, *with the accent on the root.*

e.g. писа́ть	to write	пи́сывать
звáть	to call	зо́вывать [v. § 49, VII.] and -зывáть
торговáть	to trade	торго́вывать
игра́ть	to play	и́грывать
ходи́ть	to go	ха́живать
говори́ть	to speak	гова́ривать

For other instances, v. § 59, I. (4).

These forms are conjugated regularly with a fixed accent; e.g. бывáю, пи́сываю, говáриваю, like жела́ть [v. § 47].

Observe.—дава́ть (from дать) forms its present like кова́ть [v. § 53 (3) II.], даю́, даёшь, даётъ, etc. Similarly -става́ть has -стаю́, -стаёшь, etc., and -знава́ть (from знать to know), -знаю́, -знаёшь, etc.

§ 54. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Preliminary.

The fourth conjugation consists mainly of derivative verbs with fixed accentuation.

The infinitive is in -ѣть for a few very common original verbs, and in -ать, -ять in four others: гна́ть to drive, сна́ть to sleep, сто́ять to be worth (connected with ста́ть to stand), and бо́яться to fear.

Otherwise the infinitive is in -ить, and the present terminations -ю, -ишь, -итъ, -имъ, -ите, -ять are added *directly* to the root or stem, the thematic vowel и only occurring in the infinitive and forms thence derived. For a complete paradigm of the derivative verb, v. § 47, вѣ́рить, and cf. §§ 44 and 45.

The derivative verbs of the fourth conjugation are mostly transitive, and often causative.

e.g. сла́бъ weak, слабе́ть to become weak, слаби́ть to make weak

ста́рь old, старѣ́ть to become old, ста́рить to make old

бога́тъ rich, богатѣ́ть to become rich, бога́тить to enrich

ледяно́й (from лё́дъ ice), ледене́ть to freeze (intransitive), ледени́ть to freeze (transitive)

When derived from verbs, forms in -ить are usually

the imperfectives of primitive verbs of the first conjugation.

e.g. нести	to carry	нести
везти	to carry	возити
вести	to lead	водити
лечь	to lie	ложити to lay
		лежать to lie (intrans.)

Generally speaking, these derivative verbs accent the termination throughout; there are many exceptions, some of which are detailed in § 56.

§ 55. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Original Verbs.

I. Verbs in -ать, -ять.

	гнать	стоять	спать
	to drive	to stand	to sleep
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	гна́нiе	сто́янiе	—
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	гна́нный	—	—
<i>Gerundive present :</i>	гона́	сто́я	—
<i>Present part. :</i>	гона́щий	сто́ящий	спя́щий
<i>Gerundive past :</i>	гнавъ	сто́явъ	—
	гна́вши	сто́явши	спя́вши
<i>Present :</i>	гона́ю	стою́	сплю́
	гона́ишь	стою́шь	спи́шь
	гона́тъ	стою́тъ	спи́тъ
	гона́имъ	стою́мъ	спи́мъ
	гона́ите	стою́те	спи́те
	гона́ять	стою́тъ	спя́тъ
<i>Imperative :</i>	гона́	стой	спи
<i>Past :</i>	гналъ	стоя́лъ	спалъ
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	гона́мый	—	—

боя́ться, to fear, is conjugated like сто́ять; the imperative is бо́йся.

II. Verbs in -ѣть.

Roots terminating in ш, ж, ч change ѣ to а ;
e.g. лежа́ть. Cf. § 37 and § 53 (2), and § 2 (3).

These verbs mostly have a fixed accent on the terminations.

e.g. горѣ́ть to burn, горю́, горѣ́шь . . . горѣ́тъ
 шумѣ́ть to be noisy, шумлю́, шумѣ́шь, шумѣ́тъ
 летѣ́ть to fly, летю́, летѣ́шь, летѣ́тъ
 сидѣ́ть* to sit, сижу́, сидѣ́шь, сидѣ́тъ
 дрожа́ть to tremble, дрожу́, дрожа́ешь, дрожа́тъ
 крича́ть to cry, кричу́, крича́ешь, крича́тъ
 лежа́ть to lie, лежу́, лежа́ешь, лежа́тъ*
 стуча́ть to knock, стучу́, стуча́тъ
 молча́ть* to be silent, молчу́, молча́тъ
 боля́ть (impersonal), боли́тъ, боля́тъ
 вла́ть† to command, вѣлю́, вѣли́шь
 глядя́ть* to look at, гляжу́, гляжи́шь, etc.

Some have a moveable accent.

e.g. смотре́ть to look at, смотрю́, смотре́шь . . .
 смотря́тъ, смотре́щий, -смотре́нный
 терпе́ть to endure, терплю́, терпе́шь . . . терпе́тъ
 (but терпе́мый, терпе́нный)
 держа́ть to hold, держу́, держи́шь . . . держа́тъ
 (past part. pass. держа́нный)

* Present gerundive сидя́, лёжа́, молча́, глядя́.

† Takes the dative.

дыша́ть to breathe, дышу́, дышишь, дыша́тъ
(Also a secondary form, дыха́ть, дышу́, дышешь,
дышутъ in the third conjugation)

люби́ть to love, люблю́, любишь . . . любя́тъ,
любя́щей, любя́мый

верту́ть, to turn, usually has a fixed accent on the termination ; вертишь, вертять, вертятъ are also found.

виси́ть to hang (intransitive) has a fixed accent ; but in compounds accents the root, e.g. зави́сьтъ.

A few are accented fixedly on the root.

e.g. слы́шать, слышу́, слы́ша, etc., to hear
ви́дѣть, вижу́, ви́дятъ to see

As a rough guide it may be stated that verbs of the fourth conjugation with the infinitive in -ѣть, if intransitive have a fixed accent, if transitive have a moveable accent.

Note.—плати́ть, to pay (плачу́, платишь, платя́тъ, пла́ченный), must be distinguished from пла́кать, пла́чу to weep ; пла́тишь . . . платя́тъ, to pay, is sometimes written, and commonly sounded платишь . . . платя́тъ.

The past tense of this conjugation ends in -ѣлъ, -ала, accented like the infinitive.

In this class the irregular verbs хоте́ть to wish, and бе́жать to run, must be included. бе́жать has two irregular forms, бѣгу́ I run, бѣгу́тъ they run, and derivative forms. смотре́ть, to look, is also given in full, to illustrate a verb of the fourth conjugation with a moveable accent.

<i>Infinitive</i> :	хотѣ́тъ	смотре́тъ	бѣжа́тъ
<i>Past</i> :	хотѣ́лъ	смотре́лъ	бѣжа́лъ
<i>Past gerund.</i> :	хотѣ́въ, хотѣ́вши	смотре́въ	бѣжа́въ
		смотре́вши	бѣжа́вши
<i>Pres. gerund.</i> :	хотя́ [not used]	смотря́	бѣжа́
<i>Pres. part. act.</i> :	хотя́щій	смотря́щій	бѣгу́щій
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	хотѣ́вшій	смотре́вшій	бѣжа́вшій
<i>Past pt. pass.</i> :	—	[о]смотре́нный	—
<i>Present</i> :	я хочу́	смотрю́	бѣгу́
	ты хоче́шь	смотре́шь	бѣжи́шь
	она, онъ хоче́тъ	смотре́тъ	бѣжи́тъ
	мы хотимъ	смотре́мъ	бѣжимъ
	вы хотите́	смотре́те	бѣжите́
	они́, онѣ́ хотятъ	смотре́тъ	бѣгу́тъ
<i>Pres. pt. pass.</i> :	хотимый́	—	—
<i>Imperative</i> :	хоти́	смотри́	бѣги́

Most dissyllabic original verbs in -и́тъ have a variable accent, e.g. учи́тъ to learn, учу́, учи́шь; пусти́тъ to let go, пу́щу, пу́стѣ́шь; the 1st person singular only is accented like the infinitive, e.g. пу́стятъ, слѹ́жатъ (they serve). The present gerundive active, present participle active, and present participle passive are generally accented like the infinitive, e.g. любя́, любя́щій, любя́мый (люби́тъ to love).

The past participle passive is generally accented like the secondary accent of the present, e.g. хвата́тъ to seize, хвачу́, хвата́шь, хвата́ченный.

Some verbs have a fixed accent, e.g. про́ститъ to forgive, про́щу, про́стѣ́шь, про́щённый, etc.; but such are mostly derivative, e.g. да́ръ gift, да́рътъ to present, дѣ́во marvel, удивля́тъ to marvel.

§ 56. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Derivative Verbs.

The infinitive *always* ends in -ить, and the accentuation is fixed; v. § 47 for an example.

As stated in § 54 these derivative verbs are mostly accented on the terminations.

e.g. from adjectives and nouns:—

чёрный	black	чернить	to blacken
пьяный	drunk	пьянить	to make drunk
хитрый	cunning	хитрить	{to dodge to be cunning
муча*	torment	мучить	to torture
грусть	sorrow	грустить	to grieve

But those derived from verbs mostly have a variable accent, e.g. ставить (ставлю, ста́вишь), носить, возить, водить, будить (to place, carry, convey, lead, awaken), from стать, нести́, везти́, вести́, бдѣть, v. § 54.

But very many conserve the original accent, especially if the verb has more than two syllables.

e.g. споръ	dispute	спóрить	to dispute
ссóра	quarrel	ссóрить	to set at variance
слабый	weak	сла́бить	to weaken
ста́рый	old	ста́рить	to make old
кислый	acid	кисли́ть	make acid
ни́зь	low down	ни́зить	to degrade
ни́щій	poor	ни́щить	to impoverish
вѣ́ра	faith	вѣ́рить	to believe

* Distinguish from муча́ flour : мучи́ть to flour.

Trisyllabic :—

гото́вый	ready	гото́вить	to make ready (past part. pass. гото́вленный)
эконо́мъ	economical	эконо́мить	to economize (trans. and intrans.)

To this last principle that trisyllabic verbs retain the original accent there are many exceptions, especially in all adjectives and nouns denoting substance.

е.г. бога́тый	rich	богати́ть	to enrich
весёлый	merry	весели́ть	enliven
зе́лёный	green	зеле́нить	to make green
зо́лото	gold	золоти́ть	to gild (золоче́нный)
ле́дь	ice, icy	леде́нить	to freeze
го́воръ	speech	говори́ть	to say

§ 57. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

A few anomalous verbs remain over for discussion. They are *either* of mixed conjugations or obsolete forms.

I. *Mixed conjugations.*

(1) The same root throughout.

(a) певѣ́ть, to roar, forms its present like a verb of the first conjugation, e.g. *пелу, певёшь . . . певѣ́мъ*, and therefore all derivative forms such as *певу́щий, певя́* (gerundive), etc.

(β) хоте́ть to wish [v. § 55, II.].

(γ) -дѣ́ть (only used in compounds, оде́ть to dress, etc.) and ста́ть, to stand, form their present in *дѣ́мъ, дѣ́нешъ; ста́мъ, ста́нешъ*; and belong to the first conjugation.

- (δ) *посѣтить* to visit, *обратить* to direct, from the 1st person present in *щ* instead of *ч*; thus, *посѣщѹ, посѣтишь; обратѹ, обратишь.*
- (ε) *-шибить* (only used in compounds, e.g. *ошибѣться* make a mistake, perfective; imperfective *ошибаться, ошибаюсь*, etc.) forms its present as in the first conjugation, its past as in the intransitives of the second, e.g. *ошибѹсь, ошибѣтся. ошибѹтся; past ошибся, ошиблась, ошиблось, ошиблись.* The participles are *ошибающійся, ошибші́йся; gerundives, ошибаясь, ошибшись.*
- (ζ) Distinguish *зрѣть, зрю, зрятъ [зрѣнный]* to look at; and *зрѣть* to ripen, *зрѣю, зрѣешь*, etc.

II. *Using different roots.*

E.g. in English “to be,” “I was,” “to go,” “I went.”

(1) *идти* forms its present from the root *ид*, its past from *шед*. e.g.

Present: идѹ, идѣшь . . . идѹтъ

Present part. and gerundive: идѹщій, идя́

Past: шѣлъ, шла, шло, шли

Past part. act. and gerundive: шедші́й, шедши

(2) *быть* to be

Verbal noun: бытіе

Present: есть; суть

Past: былъ, была, было, были

Future: бѹду, бѹдешь, бѹдегь, бѹдемь, бѹдете, бѹдутъ

Future participle: бѹдущій. But v. § 44 (4), footnote.

Past participle: бывші́й

Past gerundive: бывши or бывъ

Imperative: бѹдь, бѹдьте

- (3) *ѣхать*, to drive, has as its present form *ѣду*, *ѣдешь*, *ѣдете*, *ѣдемъ*, *ѣдете*, *ѣдутъ*, and thence the gerundive *ѣдучи*, the participle *ѣдущій*, the imperative *ѣзжай* or *ѣзди*; but in the past *ѣхалъ*, *ѣхавъ*, etc.; *ѣзжѣть* (iterative).

The present tense of *быть* is scarcely ever used. *есть* and *суть* only survive in definitions, and are then used for all the persons. E.g. *Богъ есть истина* God is the truth; otherwise, *Петръ очень мудръ* Peter is very wise, *это моё а то твоё* this is mine and that is yours. [v. § 86.]

The compounds of *быть* are peculiar. The future tense is *-буду*, e.g. *забыть* to forget, *забуду*.

пробыть to stay (perfective), *пробывать* (imperfective)

избыть, *избывать* to lose or squander

выбыть, *выбывать* to retire, resign

добыть, *добывать* to earn

перебыть, *перебывать* to frequent

прибыть, *прибывать* to arrive or increase; *прибыль* (fem.) profit

отбыть, *отбывать* to depart or get rid of

убыть, *убывать* to decrease

III. *Obsolete forms.*

(1) *здать*, to build, has a reduplicated present *зѣжду*, *зѣдешь*, *зѣждетъ*, *зѣждемъ*, *зѣждете*, *зѣждутъ*; and thence *зѣждущій*, *зѣждущи*; and the imperative *зѣжди* (*зѣжди*). For the rest it is like *знаю*.

(2) There are four verbs in “m,” like the Latin *sum* and the Greek verbs in *μι*.

(α) вѣмъ I know (root вѣд*).

This is entirely obsolete; but one form survives in the expression Богъ вѣсть God knows.

The derivatives are numerous, e.g. вѣдомый an acquaintance, вѣдомость the gazette or the news.

The infinitive вѣсть is also a feminine noun, meaning "news"; the iterative form вѣдать is in common use in compound verbs; -вѣдать being the perfective and -вѣдывать the imperfective; the old imperative вѣдь survives as a conjunction, more or less equivalent to *voici*.

(β) есмь, *v. antea* under быть.

(γ) ѣсть to eat (root ѣд).

Present: ѣмъ, ѣшь, ѣстѣ,† ѣди́мъ, ѣди́те, ѣдя́тъ

Imperative (irregular): ѣшь, ѣште

Past: ѣлъ, ѣла, ѣло, ѣли

Part. and gerundives: ѣдя́, ѣду́щій, ѣвши, ѣвшій, ѣдо́мый, -ѣде́нный

(δ) дать to give (perfective). The present form (perfective future):—

дамъ, дашь, дастѣ, дади́мъ, дади́те, даду́тъ

The imperfective forms are supplied by дава́тъ.
[v. § 53 (5).]

Imperative: дай

Past: далъ, дала́, далó, дали́

Part. and gerundives: да́вши, ла́вшій, да́нный

* Greek οἶδα, English "I wot."

† Cf. Latin *est* he is, *ēst* he eats; German *ist* and *isst*.

§ 58. THE ASPECTS OF THE VERBS.

Preliminary.

In § 42 (2) (ii) the “aspects” of the Russian verb were mentioned. They could not be adequately explained until the accident of the verb had been fully treated.

To recapitulate: the verb in early Russian had a present, imperfect and aorist (or preterite) indicative, and a compounded perfect and pluperfect like the English “I have read,” and the Latin *gavisus sum*. There were some few traces even of a future, but no conjunctive or other moods.

Russian discarded all the inflections save that of the present, and modified the stem or root to express the same tenses; e.g. я свистѣлъ I whistled, is “j’ai sifflé”; я свистнулъ is “je sifflai”; я свисталъ is “je sifflais,” I was whistling; я свистывалъ I used to whistle (now and then).

Each of these “aspects” has its conjugation; and, thus, those Russian verbs which have all the aspects possess nearly the same richness as the Greek verb with its present infinitive and participle, aorist forms, perfect forms, etc.

The perfective regards the action accomplished or to be accomplished, not the process of doing it.

e.g. Учить-ли вашъ мальчикъ свои уроки?

Does your boy learn his lessons (as a rule)?

Нѣтъ, но онъ ихъ выучитъ сегодня is the perfective; there can be no present to an aorist or preterite. The present form is used as a perfect contemplating the completion of the act. The answer is: "No, but he will learn them to-day."

The answer might proceed: и такъ бѣдетъ ходѣтъ въ школу съ понедѣльника (i.e. the imperfective future) "and so will go to school from Monday next." Or again, я бѣду стоѣтъ ежеднѣвно на однѣмъ и томъ же мѣстѣ I shall stand every day at the same spot. Стану can also be used as the auxiliary, but signifies rather "I will begin to."

e.g. Въ бѣдущемъ году ты станешь рабѣтатъ въ канторѣ.

Next year you will start working at the office.

The primary division, which very nearly all Russian verbs have, is into imperfective and perfective. Some have further forms, derived from either or both in certain cases, from the imperfective.

The *abstract*, e.g. рыба плаваетъ быстро the fish swims quickly (as a habit), этотъ пловецъ плыветъ очень хорошо this swimmer is swimming very well (at this instant).

The *inceptive*, e.g. болѣтъ to fall ill, заболѣтъ to fall ill gradually. The *iterative* or *habitual*, only used colloquially and in the past tense; e.g. Ходѣте-ли вы часто въ театрѣ? Нѣтъ, тепѣрь не хожу, но когда-то хаживалъ. Do you often go to the theatre? No, I don't now; once I used to go occasionally. From the perfective the perfective form in -нуть [v. § 50, I.] has been

in some verbs specialized into the "instantaneous" or "semelfactive" aspect, an act done on a single occasion.

e.g. **Запрещено стучать въ окно́.**

It is forbidden to knock at the window.

(Imperfective or iterative: **стучать, стучу́.**)

Кто́ это́ тамъ стучи́тъ въ дверь?

Who is that knocking at the door?

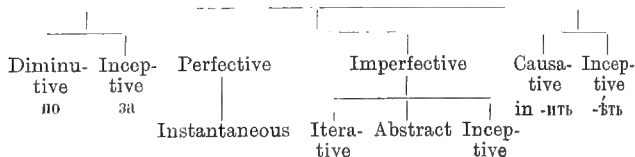
Я не могъ войти́, такъ сту́кнулъ.

I could not get in, so I knocked.

Further, certain verbs derived from adjectives have causative and inceptive forms in **-ить** and **-ѣть** [v. § 53].

		Intrans.	Trans.
e.g.	зе́лѣный green	зеле́нѣть	зеле́нить
	сла́бый weak	сла́бѣть	сла́бить etc.

Aspects.



Some verbs have no perfective. [v. § 59, IV.]

e.g. **предви́дѣть** to foresee

зави́сѣть to depend

содержа́ть (содѣржитъ) to contain

принадлежа́ть (-жу́, -жи́тъ) to belong

подлежа́тъ to be subject to

сожале́тъ (-ѣю) to regret

предстои́тъ (-стою́) to impend

сочувствова́ть to sympathize

предчу́вствовать to forebode

§ 59. THE FORMATION OF THE ASPECTS.

I. *From original verbs.*

(1) First conjugation.

The simplest form of the uncompounded verb is imperfective.

e.g. печь to cook
жечь to burn
нести to carry, etc.

With these may be reckoned the primitives of the third and fourth conjugations.

e.g. слать шлю I send
бить бью I beat
спать сплю I sleep
гнать гоню I drive

There are some exceptions :—

e.g. лечь лягу I shall lie down
пасть паду́ I shall fall
сѣсть сяду́ I shall sit down
стать стану́ I shall stand
дать дамъ I shall give

The perfectives of monosyllabic verbs are formed with prepositions, i.e. by compounding the verb.

The imperfectives of сѣсть, etc., are :—

сѣсть садиться
лечь ложиться
стать становиться (становлюсь, станóвится)
дать давать [v. § 53 (5)]
пасть па́дать, па́даю

But these verbs, *when uncompounded*, form iteratives out of the full root with an -ать suffix.

e.g. слать	to send	-сылать
брать	to take	-бирать
ждать	to wait	-ждать
драть	to tear	-дирать
звать	to call	-зывать
жечь	to burn	-жигать
тереть	to rub	-тирать
жать	to press	-жимать
жать	to reap	-жинать
ѣсть	to eat	-ѣдать
[ѣсть]	to know	вѣдать

Similarly in the third conjugation, in the *vocalic* stems.

e.g. бить	to beat	бивать
дуть	to blow	дувать
звать	to know	знавать, etc.

In the last-named verb a distinction must be made between -знаю, -знаешь, etc. (from -знать), and -знаю, -знаёшь, etc. (from -знавать). [v. § 53 (5).]

When these primitive verbs are compounded, the imperfective takes the derivative form in -ать, and the perfective the original form in -ть, -чь.

e.g. сжечь	to burn down, сожгу I shall burn down, сжигать (imperfective), сжигаю I am burning down
помочь	to help, помогу I shall help; помогать (imperfective)

Similarly призна́ть to recognise, призна́ю I shall recognise; but imperfective признава́ть, признаю́ I recognise.

	забыва́ть (imperf.)	забыва́ю I forget
<i>but</i>	забы́ть (perf.)	забу́ду I shall forget
	разсѣва́ть (imperf.)	разсѣва́ю I disperse
	разсѣ́ять (perf.)	разсѣ́ю I shall disperse
	умира́ть (imperf.)	умира́ю I am dying
	умерѣ́ть (perf.)	умру́ I shall die
	понима́ть (imperf.)	понима́ю I understand
	пони́ять (perf.)	пойму́ I shall understand
		[v. § 49, II.]
	возстава́ть (imperf.)	возстаю́ I rise
	возста́ть (perf.)	возстану́ I shall rise
	выно́сить (imperf.)	вы́нести to carry away (perf.)

Observe.—прочѣсть, прочи́тать to read through (perfective); прочи́тывать (imperfective).

(2) Second conjugation in -нуть.

These verbs, as has been explained, are all either perfective or imperfective in themselves.

e.g. уга́снуть to be extinguished (imperf.), past tense уга́сь; засо́хнуть to dry, засо́хъ; кину́ть to throw, imperf. кидáть, past tense кину́ль.

Perfectives in -нуть are often called “instantaneous” or “semelfactive,” because they denote a single action.

e.g. крича́ть to shout, кри́кнуть to shout on one occasion
дерза́ть, дерзну́ть to venture

(3) Third conjugation.

The manner in which the original verbs of this conjugation form their perfectives has been stated in § 59, I. (1).

Derivative verbs in -ѣть are “inceptive” in meaning, e.g. *зеле^нѣть*, *viridescō*, to become green, and naturally imperfective. They must be compounded with a preposition to make them perfective.

Derivative verbs in -ать, -ять are naturally imperfective, and compounded with various prepositions become perfective, e.g. *дѣ^лать* to do, *сдѣ^лать*.

Most original verbs in -ать, such as *пис^ать* to write, can only form their perfective by means of a preposition, as such verbs cannot vary their form any further, or make use of a suffixal stem, e.g. *пис^ать*, perfective *напис^ать*.

Thus *напиш^у* means “I shall write.”

To the third conjugation belong the *iteratives* in -ать and -ывать. The former are always accented on the termination, the latter always on the root which is in its fullest form.

e.g. -ч^есть, -ч^ту: *чит^ать* to read (imperfective),
прочит^ать (perfective), *ч^итываю* (iterative)
 I read here and there.

звать to call (perfective in compounds only),
 e.g. *созв^ать* to call together (iterative *созыв^ать*).

Verbs whose radical vowel is o change the o to a in forming the iterative.

e.g. *лом^ать* to break *ламыв^ать*
брос^ать to throw *брасыв^ать*
 (abstract sense: *бро^сить* concrete)

and even *усво^ить* to appropriate *усваив^ать*

In some cases, the difference between the imperfective and iterative is merely accentual, the iterative termination *-ать* being always accented.

	Imperfective.		Iterative.	
e.g. <i>двѣгаться</i>	move	<i>онъ двѣжется</i>	<i>двѣгáть</i>	<i>-двѣгáль</i>
<i>бѣгать</i>	run	<i>бѣгаю</i>	<i>бѣгáть</i>	<i>-бѣгáль</i>
<i>ползать</i>	creep	<i>ползаю</i>	<i>ползáть</i>	<i>-ползáль</i>
<i>пáдaть</i>	fall	<i>пáдаю</i>	<i>падáть</i>	<i>-падáль</i>

This distinction only applies to some original verbs of the type of писáть [v. § 52 (3)], in which the suffixal vowel -a- is dropped in the formation of the present; such verbs having a fixed accent in the imperfective on the root, and the infinitive termination -ать unaccented.

(4) Fourth conjugation.

Many of the original verbs in *-ить* or *-ѣть*, *-ю*, *-ишь*, have another form of conjugation in *-ять*, like the iteratives in *-áть*. In some cases the original form in *-ить*, *-ѣть* is perfective, the imperfective being in *-ать* (as was seen to be the rule in monosyllabic verbs like *знáть*, *мочѣ*, *берѣчь*, *знавáть*, *-могáть*, *-берегáть*); in others the original form in *-ить* is imperfective, and the alternative *-ять* or *ать* has an *abstract* meaning.

Again, some verbs in *-ить* derived from intransitive monosyllabic verbs, such as *лечѣ*, *стáть*, etc., are causative.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g. <i>простѣть</i>	to forgive *	<i>прощáть</i>	
<i>явѣть</i>	show	<i>явлáть</i>	

* *Простѣться* say farewell, *простѣте* good-bye.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	лишѣть	deprive	лишѣть
	пустѣть	permit	пускаѣть
	ступѣть	tread	ступаѣть
	хватѣть	seize	хватаѣть
	купѣть	buy	покупаѣть (distinguish купаѣть to bathe)
	родѣться	be born	раждаѣться*
	наслаждаѣться	enjoy	наслаждаѣться*
	посѣѣть	visit	посѣѣѣть*
	убѣѣть	to convince	убѣѣѣть*

	Imperfective.	
	<i>Abstract or habitual.</i>	<i>Concrete meaning.</i>
e.g.	летѣть	fly летѣѣть [v. § 58]
	плаваѣть	swim плаѣть
	бѣгаѣть	run бѣжаѣть (<i>but бѣгаѣть iterative</i>)
	сажаѣть	plant саѣть
	ломаѣть	break ломѣть
Similarly	носаѣть	carry нести
	водиѣть	lead вести
	возѣть	bear везѣть
	лазѣть	climb лѣзѣть
	блистаѣть	gleam блестяѣть
	гонаѣть	drive гнѣть

When these verbs are compounded, the derivative form in -аѣть, -яѣть is imperfective, the original form perfective.

e.g.	отплаваѣть	отплаѣть	to swim away
	убѣгаѣть	убѣжаѣть	to run away

* Church Slav change of л to жл, and т to щ.

e.g. Я ломаю карандашъ.

I (generally) break pencils.

Медвѣдь ломится въ дверь.

The bear is breaking into the door.

Корабль отплываётъ.

The ship is leaving port.

Лодка уже отплыла отъ берега.

The boat has left the shore.

Нѣмцы убѣгають отъ штыка.

Germans run away from the bayonet.

Собака схватила кость и убѣжала.

The dog snatched the bone and ran away.

Нѣмцы пришли во Францію съ тѣмъ чтобы грабить.

The Germans came into France to plunder.

Нѣмцы пришли въ Бельгію и ограбили всѣ города.

The Germans came into Belgium and plundered all the cities.

Thirdly, the alternative form in -ать, -ять may be iterative.

Imperfective.		Iterative.
e.g. хранѣть	keep	хранѣть
видѣть	see	видѣть
ударить	strike	ударѣть

In compound verbs the form in -а́ть, -я́ть is used for imperfectives, the form in -и́ть for perfectives.

e.g. Отвѣчу I shall answer.

Отвѣчаю I am answering.

Разорю ва́ши города́ и селѣнія.

I will destroy your cities and settlements.

Въ продолженіе двухъ мѣсяцевъ король разоря́лъ непріятельскіе города́.

For two months the king had been destroying the hostile cities.

Generally the iteratives are formed in **-ивать** or **-ывать**, verbs in **-ѣть** taking **-ивать**.

e.g. говорѣть	speak	говори́вать
просѣть	ask	пра́шивать
ходи́ть	go	ха́живать
глядѣть	look at	глады́вать
ви́дѣть	see	ви́дывать

II. *The formation of the perfective in derivative verbs.*

As has been stated, derivative verbs end in **-ѣть**, **-ать** and **-ить**.

Most verbs in **-ѣть** are inceptive and naturally imperfective, and generally, if uncompounded, have no perfective.

e.g. слабе́ть to become weak

Verbs in **-ать** form the perfective by compounding, and this rule applies to original verbs like **писа́ть**, **пишу́**, **пишетъ**, as well as to derivatives, such as **жела́ть**, **пожела́ть**.

As to the choice of preposition, there is no general rule; **на**, **разъ**, **по**, **о**, **у**, **вы**, **съ**, etc., can all be used. Only practice can distinguish the perfectives from the compounds.

e.g. дѣ́лать	to do	сдѣ́лать
жела́ть	to wish	пожела́ть
владѣ́ть	to rule	овладѣ́ть
смотре́ть	to look	посмотре́ть
ви́дѣть	to see	уви́дѣть
писа́ть	to write	написа́ть
тра́тить	to lose	истра́тить

Verbs in **-ить** mostly have a secondary form **-ять**, which in the uncompounded verb has an iterative

meaning. Some uncompoundd imperfective verbs in -ить form their perfectives, like those in -ать, by compounding with a particle.

e.g. стрóить	to build	пострóить
гра́бить	to plunder	огра́бить
серд́иться	to be angry	разсерд́иться
тревóжить	to disquiet	встревóжить
плат́ить	to pay	заплат́ить

Again no general rule can be stated.

III. *Aspects formed from a different root.*

Of these there are very few.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	ид́ти to go		ход́ить
	пойм́ать to catch		лов́ить (<i>but</i> понять understand, поним́ать)
	уд́арить to strike		б́ить, and удар́ить
	полож́ить to lay		класть (клад́у)
	вз́ять to take		бр́ать

	Concrete.		Abstract.	Iterative.
e.g.	ѣ́хать to drive		ѣ́здить	ѣ́зжать
	слы́шать (слы́шу) to hear		слых́ать (слы́шý)	
	ды́шать (ды́шитъ) to breathe		дых́ать (ды́шетъ)	

e.g. Я ѣ́зжу въ гóродъ кáждый день.
I go to the city every day.

Я ѣ́халъ домóй съ вóзомъ.
I drove home (in a carriage).

Почт́и ежедн́евно хож́у пѣ́шкóмъ домóй, но
когда́-то я ѣ́зжалъ вмѣ́стѣ съ бáриномъ.

Almost every day I walk home; but
sometimes I drove with the master.

IV. *The aspects of compound verbs.*

The general rule is that all compound verbs are perfective. The imperfective is formed by the iterative form in -ать, -ять, -ывать, -ивать; if a derivative form exists in -ить this serves as the imperfective, and the iterative in -ать, -ять, -ывать conserves the iterative meaning.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	вынести	to carry out	выно́сить
	выпоси́ть	to endure	выно́шивать
	объѣ́хать	to drive round	объѣ́зжать
	вывезти	to cart out	выво́зить
but	выводи́ть	to lead about	выва́живать
	выво́зить	to take about (in a carriage)	выва́живать
	вы́звать	to summon	вызыва́ть
	выигра́ть	to gain at play	выигрыва́ть

Observe.—вы takes the accent, except in the imperfective, which retains the accent of the uncompounded verb. All other prepositions are unaccented, except in the past tenses and past participles passive of monosyllabic verbs, e.g. избра́нъ chosen [v. § 49, II.], на́вять, про́далъ, etc.

e.g.	вы́йти	to go out	выходи́ть
	провести́	to pass (time)	проводи́ть
	обнови́ть	to renew	обновля́ть
<i>Observe</i>	положи́ть	suppose	полага́ть
	уложи́ть	pack	укла́дывать
	доложи́ть	report (a fact)	докла́дывать

Observe :—

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
	вы́бѣжать	to run away	выбѣ́гать
<i>but</i>	выбѣ́гать	to attain by a run	выбѣ́гивать
	вы́йти	to go away	выхо́дить
<i>but</i>	выхо́дить	to gain	выха́живать
	за́бхать (за́бду)	to go beyond	заб́хаться
<i>but</i>	заб́дывать	to tire out	заб́живать
	провести́	to lead through	прово́дить
<i>but</i>	прово́дить	to accompany	прово́жать, or прово́живать

In some cases the only perfective is the semelfactive in -нуть.

e.g.	дви́нуть	to move	дви́гать
	кивну́ть	to nod	кива́ть
	тро́нуть	to touch	тро́гать
	шепну́ть	to whisper	шепта́ть
	кри́кнуть	to cry	крича́ть
	вздохну́ть	to sigh	взды́хать

In forming imperfectives the general rule is that the iterative form of the uncompounded verb is the stem of the imperfective of the compounded verb.

e.g.	проме́длить	to delay	проме́дливать
	обману́ть	to deceive	обма́нывать
	погасну́ть*	to be extinguished	погаса́ть
	поги́бнуть*	to perish	погиба́ть
	взгляну́ть	to look up	взгля́дывать
	замкну́ть	to lock up	замы́кать

Observe.—тяну́ть (imperfective) to pull, тя́гивать; but in compounds, протяну́ть to stretch forth, проти́гивать. [v. § 50, I.]

* But past tense погíбъ, погáсъ.

e.g. Онъ вы́тянулъ о́громаго лёща.

He pulled up a huge bream.

Ива́нъ Ива́нычъ тѣвствѣ́ямку до́брого семья́нина.

Iván Iványč works hard like a good family man [pulls the shoulder-strap].

Мой дру́гъ нео́днокра́тно вы́тѣгива́лъ ме́ня изъ тру́днаго поло́женія.

My friend more than once has pulled me out of an awkward situation.

Other instances are :—

Perfective.

Imperfective.

у́звѣтъ	acknowledge	узнава́ть (узнаю́)
		[§ 53 (5)]
осла́бѣтъ	to become weak	осла́бѣва́тъ
осла́бнуть (semelfactive)		
повѣ́рить	believe	повѣ́рять
пору́чить	to commission	пору́чать
продо́лжить	to continue	продо́лжать
помѣ́тить	to mark	помѣ́чать
убѣ́жать	to run away	убѣ́гать
переплы́ть	to swim through	переплыва́тъ
уѣ́хать	to drive away (in a carriage)	уѣ́зжать
отогна́ть	to drive away	отгона́ть
описа́ть	to describe	описыва́тъ
пригото́вить	to prepare	приготовля́тъ
придѣ́лать	to affix	придѣ́лывать
приже́чь	to scorch	прижига́тъ
приказа́ть	to decree	приказы́вать
прими́рить	to reconcile	прими́рять
избра́ть	to choose	избира́тъ

The learner must *not* confuse those verbs derived from *compound nouns or adjectives*. Such verbs are naturally imperfective, as the formative stem contains the particle, which is not added to the verb.

	Imperfective.	Perfective.
e.g. <i>безъ поко́я</i> without rest	<i>безпоко́ить</i> disturb	<i>обеспоко́ить</i>
<i>ра́зумъ</i> reason	<i>разу́мѣть</i> understand	<i>уразу́мѣть</i>
<i>обѣ́дъ</i> dinner	<i>обѣ́дать</i> dine	<i>пообѣ́дать</i>
<i>забо́та</i> trouble	<i>забо́титься</i>	<i>озабо́титься</i>
<i>наслѣ́д-ство</i> inheritance	<i>наслѣ́довать</i>	<i>унаслѣ́довать</i>
<i>предчу́вствие</i> foreboding	<i>предчу́вствовать</i>	
<i>сочу́вствие</i> sympathy	<i>сочу́вствовать</i> [v. § 58]	
<i>безъ люде́й</i> without people	<i>безлю́дѣть</i> to become de- populated (<i>обезлю́дѣть</i> perf.)	

The accentuation of compounded verbs is that of the simple, save with *вы*, v. § 59, IV

Except *вто́рить* to repeat

повтори́ть to repeat, imperfective *повтори́ть*

ясни́ться to clear up (of the weather)

изъясни́ть explain, imperfective *изъясни́тъ*

V. *Causatives and inceptives.*

As stated in § 53 (1) and § 54, verbs derived from adjectives have transitive forms in *-и́ть*, and intransitives in *-ѣ́ть*.

e.g. *си́нѣй* blue, *синѣ́ть* to turn blue, *сини́ть* to make blue

мя́гкѣй soft, *мягчи́ть* and *размягча́ть*

сла́дкѣй sweet, *услadı́ть* and *услажда́ть*

молодо́й young, *молодѣ́ть* to grow young,

молоди́ть to make young, etc., etc.

Similarly, transitive verbs in *-ить* are derived from intransitive primitives.

e.g. лечь to lie down	положить to lay
сѣсть to sit down	посадить to seat
стать to stand (стапу)	становиться to stand, and ставить to place

e.g. Я поставилъ вазу на колонну.
I put the vase on the column.

VI. *по* and *за* as forming depreciatory and inceptive verbs.

по when compounded with some verbs gives a depreciatory or diminutive sense.

e.g. мыться to wash
помыться to wash here and there
помутить to create squabbles
покуривать, покурить, to smoke occasionally
покушать (perfective поѣсть) to eat by snacks
покармливать (покормить) to feed slightly
покачивать to waver (покачать perfective,
покачнуть to shake)
покашлять to cough a little (покашливать)

за often creates another inceptive aspect, to begin doing.

e.g. заваривать (заварить perfective) to simmer
завѣшивать (завѣсить) to veil, begin veiling
засвистать to begin whistling
засмѣяться to begin laughing
засыхать (засохнуть) to start drying
затмевать (затмить) to grow dusk, etc.
затонуть to start sinking (затапливать),
затопить perfective
засѣвать (засѣять) to begin to sow

But compounds with *за* are often perfective.

e.g. *Русские затопили** корабль въ Севастопольской бухтѣ.

The Russians sank the ship in the Bay of Sebastopol.

§ 60. REFLEXIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.

As stated previously [v. *infra*, § 10, § 42 (2) (i) and (ii)] the Russian verb is very defective; it possesses only one conjugated tense, and no subjunctives.

The passive is mostly supplied by the reflexive, *ся* and *сь* being added to the terminations [v. § 41, V. (1)]; *ся* being added to consonantal terminations, *сь* to vocalic. This *ся* is nearly always unaccented; there are very few exceptions.

e.g. я дѣлаюсь I become, am made, дѣлается, дѣлавшись, etc.

родиться to be born, родится, родился, родились or родились.

Dependent verbs also exist, i.e. reflexive forms in which the reflexive idea has vanished, or is not expressed or required in translation.

e.g. я моюсь I wash myself, I wash

король верну́лся домо́й the King has returned home

стыдѣ́ться to feel ashamed †

* Distinguish затопить, затопленный (затоплять) to sink; and затопить, затопленный, затоплять, to heat.

† Distinguish стыдъ shame, стыдѣ́ться; and стыть (perfective), стынуть (imperfective) to be cold.

Similarly in French “se suicider,” “s’approcher de” are always reflexive or deponent.

But when a verb has as its express object the same person as the subject, the enclitic form *ся* and *сь* (which are *always* sounded *сá* and *сь* [v. § 41, V. (1)]), are *not* used, the full form *себя* taking their place. .

e.g. Алексѣй не владѣеть собой.

Alexis has no self-control.

Мальчикъ взлѣзъ на крышу и убійся.

The boy crawled on to the roof and was killed.

Онъ покóнчилъ собой.

He committed suicide [ended by himself].

Онъ оговорился что его цифры могутъ быть невѣрны и себя оградилъ этимъ отъ всякихъ нареканій.

He defended himself on the ground that his figures might not be correct, and guarded himself on this score from all blame.

Ты не использовалъ своего положенія а я провёлъ своё время безполезнымъ образомъ.

You made no use of your position, and I spent my time uselessly.

Я всегда имѣю при себѣ портретъ жены.

I always have my wife's portrait with me.

The Passive is also expressed in two other ways:—

(1) With a passive participle and the verb *быть* as in English.

e.g. Комната была убрана цвѣтами.

The room was decorated with flowers.

(2) With the verb in the third person plural, with the infinitive meaning of “one,” “*on*,” “man.”

e.g. Зовѹтъ меня по фами́лии Мо́наховымъ.

My family name is Monákhov [they call me . . .]

The reflexive forms are never used loosely to express “one another.” Thus [v. § 82, IV.] :—

Рабо́чие Росси́и, А́нглии, Фран́ции и Герма́нии
убива́ютъ другъ дру́га.

The workmen of Russia, England, France and
Germany are slaying one another.

Слѣ́довали другъ за дру́гомъ.

They followed each other.

THE NUMERALS.

§ 61. PRELIMINARY.

The inflection of the Russian numerals is at first sight very difficult. The problem can be simplified.

(a) In the first place, nearly all the numerals are nouns, and are therefore followed by the genitive plural.

(β) Secondly, being nouns, when compounded, e.g. двѣ́сти (two hundred), each part follows its own declension.

(γ) Thirdly, два, три, четы́ре, 2, 3 and 4, take the equivalent of the old dual, i.e. the genitive singular.

(δ) Fourthly, the noun in ordinals is governed by the last element of the numeral.

e.g. пять козъ five goats

but двѣ козы two goats (коза́, plural козы́)

три рубля́ three roubles (plural рублѣ́)

три́дцать три поѣзда́ thirty-three trains

Also сто one hundred

двѣ́сти two hundred (Old Slav dual termination)

три́ста three hundred (gen. sing.)

пятьсо́тъ five hundred (gen. plural)

Other notes on the use of the numerals will be found in § 81.

§ 62. I.—*The Numerals 1–10.*

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Collective.*</i>	<i>Fraction.</i>
1	о́динъ	Adj.	пе́рвый		
2	два	„	второ́й	дво́е, па́ра	полови́на
3	три	„	тре́тій†	тро́е	тре́ть ‡
4	четы́ре	„	четве́ртый	че́тверо	че́тверть‡
5	пять	Noun	пя́тый	пя́теро	пя́тая§
6	шесть	„	шесто́й	ше́стеро	шестая§
7	семь	„	седьмо́й	се́меро	etc.
8	во́семь	„	восью́мй	во́сьмеро	
9	де́вять	„	девя́тый	де́вятеро	
10	де́сять	„	деся́тый	де́сятеро	

These are the ten simple forms.

* The most common are дво́е, тро́е, че́тверо, пя́теро, се́меро; but all are equally common in the form дво́е, тро́е, etc., meaning 2nd, twice, three times as much. Families are thus designated: у него́ дво́е, тро́е, че́тверо, дѣтей: пять, шесть, семь, etc., челове́къ дѣтей; of an assembly, ихъ бу́детъ пять, etc., челове́къ.

† Declined like бара́нїи [v. § 34 (3)].

‡ Feminines in „.

§ Supply часть part. All the other fractions are similarly formed.

|| Very rare.

Одѣнъ is declined exactly like самъ [v. § 41, VIII.]; the vowel “и” drops out.

Thus—одѣнъ, одѣо, одѣа, одѣогó, одѣоii, etc.

<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
e.g. Nom.	одѣи	одѣѣ
Gen. Loc.	одѣихъ	одѣѣхъ
Dat.	одѣимъ	одѣѣмъ
Instr.	одѣими	одѣѣми

The plural means “some,” cf. English “the ones.” Both forms, одѣи, одѣѣ, are generally sounded alike (одѣи).

e.g. Вѣдъ на ѣтихъ полкахъ остѣлось тóлько дѣсять книгъ.

There are only ten books left on these shelves.

У менѣ остѣлось лишъ три рублѣ.

I have only three roubles left.

Какъ на бѣдѣ у менѣ остѣлось тóлько три яѣцѣ.

Unluckily I have only three eggs left.

два, три, четѣре are declined as follows:—

	<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	
e.g. Nom.	два	двѣ	три	четѣре
Gen. Loc.	двуѣ		трѣхъ	четѣрѣхъ
Dat.	двумъ		трѣмъ	четѣрѣмъ
Instr.	двумѣ		трѣмѣ	четѣрѣмѣ

пѣть to дѣсять are regular nouns like кость, часть, etc.

e.g. Nom.	пѣть
Gen. Dat. Loc.	пѣти
Instr.	пѣтью

But, as nouns, the numerals are only followed by the genitive in the nominative or accusative; in oblique

cases they take the case of the nouns ; the numeral is attracted to the case of the noun.

о́ба, о́бѣ both, is declined similarly to два.

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	о́ба	о́бѣ
Gen. Loc.	о́боихъ	о́бѣихъ
Dat.	о́боимъ	о́бѣимъ
Instr.	о́боими	о́бѣими

II.—*The Numerals 11–90.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
11	оди́надцать	Noun	оди́надцатый
12	двѣ́надцать	„	двѣ́надцатый (collective дю́жина)
13	три́надцать	„	три́надцатый
14	четы́надцать	„	четы́надцатый
15	пяти́надцать	„	пяти́надцатый
16	шести́надцать	„	шести́надцатый
17	семи́надцать	„	семи́надцатый
18	восемна́дцать	„	восемна́дцатый
19	девятна́дцать	„	девятна́дцатый
20	два́дцать	„	два́дцатый
21	два́дцать оди́нъ [v. § 61 (δ)]		два́дцать пе́рвый
22	два́дцать два, etc.	„	два́дцать второ́й, etc.
30	три́дцать	Noun	три́дцатый
40	со́рокъ	„	сороко́вый
50	пяти́десятъ*	„	пяти́десятый
60	шести́десятъ	„	шести́десятый
70	се́мьдесятъ	„	семи́десятый
80	восемьдесятъ	„	восемьде́сятый
90	девяно́сто	„	девяно́стый

For the fractions, v. пять.

* Sounded pidd'isýát'.

The cardinals from 11–90 are mere compositions of the simple forms and *десять* (10).

(1) The “teens” are formed by saying one-on-ten, two-on-ten; the preposition *на* is accented, except in *одиннадцать* and *четырнадцать*, and *десять* is contracted to *дцать*.

The numbers 11–19 are all declined like *десять*.

e.g. Nom.	се́мнадцать
Gen. Dat. Loc.	се́мнадцати
Instr.	се́мнадцатью

(2) The numbers 20 and 30 are similar compounds, two-ten, three-ten. They are declined thus:—

Nom.	три́дцать
Gen. Dat. Loc.	три́дцати
Instr.	три́дцатью

(3) *сорок* (40), and *девяносто* (90), are nouns of the first conjugation. *сорок* accents the termination throughout, e.g. *сорока́, сороку́*, etc.

(4) The cardinals 50, 60, 70, 80 decline both parts *separately and similarly*.

e.g. Nom. Voc. Acc.	се́мьдесятъ
Gen. Loc. Dat.	се́мидесяти
Instr.	се́мьюдесятью

As though the two words were not written together.

III.—*The Numerals 100–1,000,000.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
100	сто	Noun	со́тый*
200	два́сти	Adj. & noun (joined)	двухсо́тый
300	три́ста	„ „	трёхсо́тый
400	четы́реста	„ „	четырёхсо́тый

* Collective со́тия.

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
500	пятьсо́тъ	Two nouns	пятисо́тый
600	шестьсо́тъ	„ „	шестисо́тый
700	семьсо́тъ	„ „	семисо́тый
800	восемьсо́тъ	„ „	восемьсо́тый
900	девятьсо́тъ	„ „	девяτισо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	Noun	ты́сячный
2,000	двѣ ты́сячи	Adj. & noun	двухты́сячный
3,000	три ты́сячи	„ „	трѣхты́сячный
4,000	четы́ре ты́сячи	„ „	четырёхты́сячный
	and so on		
60,000	шестьдеся́тъ ты́сячъ	Three nouns	шестидеся́ти-ты́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячъ	Nouns	сто- or ста-ты́сячный
1,000,000	милліо́нъ	Noun	милліо́нный

сто is declined as follows:—

<i>Singular.</i>	Nom.	Voc.	Acc.	сто
	Gen.			ста, etc.

Similarly девяно́сто. But when сто is used in a long figure, with others, all the oblique cases are uniformly ста (the genitive); and similarly девяно́сто.

<i>Plural.</i>	Nom.	Voc.	Acc.	ста
	Gen.			со́тъ
	Dat.			стамъ
	Instr.			ста́ми
	Loc.			стахъ

All the compound numerals in this division decline each part separately.

e.g. двѣ́сти, двухсо́тъ, двумстамъ, двумяста́ми, двухстахъ, etc.

ты́сяча is a regular feminine noun; but the instrumental singular is sometimes ты́сячью, as though it were a noun of the third declension.

сто, со́рокъ, девяно́сто, when declined with nouns, extend the genitive ending to the dative and instrumental, optionally to the locative.

e.g. Nom. Acc. сто со́рокъ листьо́въ 140 leaves (of paper)

Gen. ста сорока́ листьо́въ

Dat. ста сорока́ листьа́мъ

Instr. ста сорока́ листьа́ми

Loc. ста сорока́ листьа́хъ

IV. (1) *Frequency.* Examples of use:—

оди́нъ разъ once, or одна́жды

два́ ра́за twice, or два́жды

три́ ра́за thrice, or три́жды

четы́ре ра́за four times, etc., or четы́режды

пять разъ [v. § 24 (4)]

This is the only and regular way of forming this series.

(2) *Distributives* are formed with the preposition по, e.g. по́ два, по́ три, по́ четы́ре; but with all other numbers in the dative: по́ пяти, по́ сту, по́ сороку́, по́ девяносту́ (or по́ сорока́).

(3) *Nought* is нуль, masculine.

(4) *The noun is governed by the numeral immediately preceding, however high the whole numeral may be.* In the nominative, or accusative, the noun thus enumerated is in the singular after оди́нъ; gen. sing. after два, три,

четыре; gen. plural after all the others. In the oblique cases, i.e. all except the accusative and nominative, the numeral and noun alike are in concord in the appropriate oblique case.

e.g. двѣдцать одѣнь фунтъ 21 pounds

трѣдцать три коня 33 horses

мѣньше двадцати пяти минутъ less than 25 minutes

(5) *Decimals.*

нуль цѣлыхъ дѣвять десятыхъ копѣйки съ версты.

·9 kop. to the verst (nought wholes and nine tenths . . .).

Отъ одной до ста шестидесяти вёрстъ, по одной цѣлой, четыре тысячи триста семьдесятъ пять десяти тысячныхъ копѣйки съ пассажира.

From 1 to 160 versts at 1·4375 kop. per passenger per verst.

(6) *Compound ordinals. Only the last numeral is declined.*

e.g. Двѣдцать девятаго декабрѣ (мѣсяца) въ тысяча восемьсотъ девяносто седьмомъ году.

On the 29th Dec. 1914. [v. § 24 (1).]

Въ сто девяносто седьмомъ году до рождества Христова.

In 197 B.C.

Гостинница съ болѣе чѣмъ двумястами номерами.

A hotel with over 200 rooms.

Цѣна комнатъ понижается лѣтомъ до пятидесяти процентовъ.

The price of rooms is reduced in the summer by 50%.

As a complete example, 2,367,134·8295 aršins (аршинъ a measure of length 'about a yard') would be thus declined: —

Nom. ^{NOM. SING.} Два милліона, ^{GEN. SING.} триста ^{NOM. PLUR.} шестидесять ^{NOM. PLUR.} семь ^{NOM. PLUR.} тысячъ, ^{NOM. PLUR.} сто ^{NOM. PLUR.} тридцать ^{NOM. PLUR.} четыре ^{NOM. PLUR.} цѣлыхъ, ^{NOM. PLUR.} восемь ^{NOM. PLUR.} тысячъ ^{NOM. PLUR.} двѣсти ^{NOM. PLUR.} девяносто ^{NOM. PLUR.} пять ^{NOM. PLUR.} десятитысячныхъ аршинъа.

Acc. As genitive or nominative; in this case as nominative.

Gen. Двухъ милліоновъ, трѣхсотъ шестидесяти семі тысячъ, ста тридцати четырёхъ цѣлыхъ, восьми тысячъ двухсотъ девяноста пяти десятитысячныхъ аршинъа.*

Dat. Двумъ милліонамъ трѣмстамъ шестидесяти семі тысячамъ ста (or стѣ) тридцати четырёхъ цѣлымъ, восьми тысячамъ девяноста (or девяностѣ) пяти десятитысячнымъ аршинъа.

Instr. Двумя милліонами тремястами шестью-дѣсятью, семью тысячами, ста тридцатью четырьмя цѣлыми, восьмью тысячами девяноста (or девяностомъ) пятью десятитысячными аршинъа.

Loc. Двухъ милліонахъ трѣхстахъ шесті-десяти, семі тысячахъ, ста тридцати четырёхъ цѣлыхъ, восьми тысячахъ девяноста (or девяностѣ) пяти десятитысячныхъ аршинъа.

(7) два, три, четыре, *in the nominative or accusative*, are followed by the noun in the genitive singular or by the nominative *or* genitive plural of adjectives.

* Gen. sing., the decimal being expressed by $\frac{8295}{10000}$ of an aršin. The last numeral always governs the noun.

This arbitrary rule is based on the fact that два, три, четыре in the older language took the dual; the dual having become obsolete, use was made of whatever inflections most closely approximated to it.

e.g. Nom. два высо́кихъ (or -ie) солда́та two tall soldiers

Gen. двухъ высо́кихъ солда́тъ

Dat. двумъ высо́кимъ солда́тамъ

Instr. двумя́ высо́кими солда́тами

Loc. двухъ высо́кихъ солда́тахъ

With nouns only used in the plural, there are alternative forms, дво́и, тро́и; otherwise the collectives are used.

e.g. воро́та the gates че́тверо воро́тъ four gates

But the ordinary collectives, with the genitive plural, may be used instead of дво́и, тро́и, че́тверо.*

дво́е and тро́е are declined like обо́а, but accent the terminations *и́хъ, и́мъ, и́ми*.

че́тверо and all the other similar collectives form the oblique cases like plural adjectives, accenting the termination, e.g. *пяте́рыхъ*, etc.

(8) *полови́на*, standing by itself, is "a half."

It is also used in composition with other words, e.g. *полтора́ 1½* (for *полъ-вторá*; cf. German, *andert-halb 1½*, *dritthalb 2½*); also in words like *полу́нра* half a pound, *полчасá* half an hour, *полго́да* half a year, etc. For further notes, v. § 81, IV.

* So, too, in Latin: *templum*, *tria templa*; but *aedes*, plural *trinae aedes*.

Both parts are separately declined; all the oblique cases of *полъ* being *полу*.

	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
	$1\frac{1}{2}$ aršins	$1\frac{1}{2}$ versts
e.g. N.V.A.	полторá аршіна	полторы версты
Gen.	полўтора аршинъ*	полўторы вёрсть
Dat.	{ полўтора } аршінамъ	полўторѣ верстáмъ
	{ полўтору }	
Instr.	{ полўтора } аршінами	полўторою верстáми
	{ полўторымъ }	
Loc.	{ полўтора } аршінахъ	полўторѣ верстáхъ
	{ полўторѣ }	

*Singular.**Plural.*

Half-pound

N.V.A.	полфўнта	полуфўнты
Gen.	полуфўнта	полуфўнтовъ
Dat.	полуфўнту	полуфўнтамъ
Instr.	полуфўнтомъ	полуфўнтами
Loc.	полуфўнтѣ	полуфўнтахъ

However, usage varies with regard to *полторá*, and the masculine forms are often employed with feminine nouns. The noun-component is declined in full in compounds like *полфўнта*, and bears and retains its own accent.

Пóлдень and *пóлночь*, “noon” and “midnight,” are declined *полўдня*, *полўночи*, and so on, the accent always resting on the second syllable, and the *полу* being invariable.

Similarly, *полторáста* 150, *полўторáста*, in all oblique cases.

Other fractions are expressed much as in English.

e.g. двѣ съ полови́ной бутылки two and a half bottles
 три́дцать пять и се́мнадцать три́дцать восьмы́хъ
 $35\frac{17}{38}$
 четы́ре и три че́тверти $4\frac{3}{4}$

(9) *Dates.*

The date and the month are put into the genitive, and the year, if accompanying, into the ordinal with the genitive го́да (го́дь) year. If the year stands by itself, the locative въ го́ду is used.

In *dates* the plural of го́дь is лѣ́та (лѣ́то summer).

e.g. двáдцать пята́го декаб́ря ты́сяча де́вятсотъ
 че́тверта́го го́да, 25th December 1904
 въ ты́сяча восе́мьсотъ пята́дцатомъ го́ду
 in 1815
 ше́стьдесятъ лѣ́тъ то́му наза́дъ sixty years ago

Numerals preceding the noun are exact denotations; when they follow, approximate.

e.g. го́да че́резъ три́ in about three years' time
 послѣ́ трѣ́хъ лѣ́тъ after three years

§ 63. THE ADVERBS.

The adverbial forms of adjectives are simply the neuter singular predicative, excepting adjectives in -скій, which form -ски; e.g. стрóго sternly, до́рого dearly, ра́ньше earlier, эконо́мически economically.

Other adverbs will be learnt in the course of reading.

§ 64. THE PREPOSITIONS.

These are very commonly used in Russian, and are dealt with in §§ 70–80 in the Syntax.

§ 65. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunctions are best acquired in the course of reading. As the Russian verb possesses no moods, and as there is no inversion of sentences, the conjunctions present no difficulty. Some few may be noticed here.

и “and.”

да “yes,” is also used for “and,” but has a corroborative strengthening significance, and belongs to the older language.

и also is used in a sentence to mean “also.”

а “but” or “and,” when used in contradistinction rather than conjunction.

но “but” in contradistinction, or denial.

ещё “also.”

или “or.” **или—или**, “either . . . or.”

ни—ни “neither—nor.” As will be seen in § 85, these require a double negative, i.e. a negatived verb as well.

§ 66. THE INTERJECTIONS.

These are best learnt from reading. Russian being a phonetic language, these primitive sounds are written as pronounced, not conventionally as in English; e.g. “hush” for “sh,” “ough!” for pain.

e.g. in Russian **ушъ!** **охъ!** **ахъ!** etc.

Other interjections are developments from recognised words, e.g. “Lo” (from “look”).

So, too, in Russian **убы!** woe!

SYNTAX.

§ 67. PRELIMINARY.

In comparison with most other European languages Russian syntax presents comparatively few difficulties. The order is much the same as in English—subject, verb, object, adverbs.

There are no subjunctives, the use of which becomes technical as in French; gender is in the main sex, or determined by the suffix. Thus in French “*sa majesté le roi*” is feminine, and a following sentence must run: “*elle a bien voulu.*” In Russian, **Его Императорское* Величество Царь соизволилъ**; the verb is in the masculine, though **Величество** is neuter.

In German, again, “*das Mädchen*” the girl, is supposed to be followed by neuter pronouns; in Russian, as in English, child **дитя** (neuter), **лицо** person (neuter) may be followed by **онъ, она́**, according to sense. Or again, **дѣсять** is feminine, but “there remained ten” (neuter, *general* impersonal sense) is **осталось дѣсять**. [v. § 62, 1.]

The Russian richness in inflections gives the language a freedom of order such as was possessed by ancient Latin and Greek. But whereas the order of Latin was conventionalised and stiffened, Russian retains the natural order of words, with the liberty of slight transposition for emphasis; adjectives precede, unless otherwise desired; in fact, much the same considerations obtain as in English. But ambiguity ceases, the inflection defining the relations.

* v. § 83, IV.

In one respect, as stated in § 33, Russian shows less flexibility in the formation of compound nouns. German (amongst modern languages) is the most adaptable, e.g. "Eisenbahnfremdverkehr-
verbindungen" Railway - foreign - traffic - connections. English tacitly has the same power, with some ambiguity, e.g. The Foreign Office Clerks' Providence Society; the wooden baby's chair. In Russian all such relations *must* be stated by means of adjectives; e.g. желѣзная доро́га the railway, военные запáсы war supplies, на полицѣйскомъ хранѣніи in police detention.

§ 68. THE ARTICLE.

The article does not exist in Russian. Nevertheless *тотъ* is occasionally used for the definite article, and *одинъ* for the indefinite, where the sentence requires amplification.

e.g. In the folk-tales:—

Жи́лъ-былъ одинъ бѣ́дный вдовѣ́ць.

There once lived a poor widower.

Тотъ са́мый торго́вецъ кото́рый мнѣ́ про́далъ
велосипе́дь совѣ́туетъ те́перь мнѣ́ купи́ть
мотоси́клеть.

The same dealer who sold me a bicycle now
recommends me to buy a motor-cycle.

§ 69. THE CASES.

1. *The Nominative*.—As in all languages, the nominative is used for the subject of the sentence. It can *never* be governed by any preposition.

II. *The Vocative* has survived only a very few strictly ecclesiastical phrases.

е.г. Бóже	from Богъ God
Гóсподи	from Госпóдь Lord
Óтче	from Отéцъ Father
Христé	from Христóсь Christ
Кня́же	from Князь Prince
Иисýсе	from Иисýсь Jesus
Сýне	from Сынъ the Son
Царю́	from Царь Tsar
Влады́ко	from Влады́ка Lord

In modern Russian the nominative takes its place.

III. *The Accusative* is properly the case to denote the direct object; e.g. Jack (nominative) built a house (accusative) Иванъ постро́илъ домъ.

However, in modern Russian, except in the singular of the second declension, special accusative forms no longer exist. [v. § 13.]

Hence a rule has sprung up that, *except* for nouns of the second declension in the singular, the objective case shall be the genitive whenever the object is a living being; also, without any exception, whenever the sentence is negative (in which event the genitive is really partitive; e.g. "I did not see him" is equivalent to "I saw nothing *of* him" *). In every case the nominative form is used.

е.г. Принеси́ сюда́ я́блоки.
Bring the apples here.
Приведи́ за́втра твоего́ дру́га.
Bring your friend to-morrow.

* Cf. in modern Spanish the use of *a* when the object is a person, e.g. "él conduzo *a* Juan" he brought John.

Я не ви́дѣлъ чемодáна.

I did not see the portmanteau.

Она́ не нашлá ло́шади.

She did not find the horse.

Никогдá не поймáешь ры́бы.

You never catch a fish.

Я привё́лъ двухъ лошадéй.

I have brought two horses.

Besides this very limited use as the objective case, this accusative case, but never its genitive substitute, is found with the following meaning: to indicate duration in space or time.

е.г. Я ждалъ тебѣ́ всё́ у́тро, цѣ́лый де́нь, всю́ ночь,
всю́ недѣ́лю, полчасá.

I was waiting for you all the morning, the whole day, all the night, all the week, half an hour.

Я гуля́лъ три часа́ и прошё́лъ шесть вёрстѣ́.

I walked for three hours and went six versts.

Я прошё́лъ всё́ разсто́йніе ме́жду Варшáвой и Кра́ковомъ.

I went all the distance between Warsaw and Cracow.

Лётчикъ пролетѣ́лъ полови́ну пу́ти къ на́шему помѣ́стью.

The airman flew half the way to our country house.

IV. *The Genitive.*

In modern Russian the genitive is used for a variety of purposes. The simple genitive indicates the relationship of possession between two substantives.

In English there are two methods of indicating the genitive: the possessive case in *s*, and the preposition *of*.

(i) The simple genitive is used in three distinct ways: (*a*) subjective, (*β*) objective, (*γ*) defining.

e.g. (*a*) Wilson's house, i.e. Wilson has a house.
(In such cases an active verb may be substituted.)

Cæsar's hatred, i.e. Cæsar hates.

(*β*) Henry IV.'s assassin, i.e. Henry IV. *was* assassinated.

The torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. the *Formidable* was torpedoed. (I.e. a passive verb may be substituted.)

(*γ*) A man of great talent, i.e. a greatly talented man.

In the last case an adjective may be substituted, and such phrases are really *inversions* of adjectives.

These subjective and objective genitives may be compounded.

e.g. U 21's torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. U 21 torpedoed the *Formidable*.

In other languages there is great ambiguity on this score. In Latin the genitive is used both subjectively and objectively: thus "Cæsar's odium" may mean either that Cæsar hates, or that Cæsar is hated; so, too, in French, "la haine de Césaire."

In English there are irregular attempts to distinguish by means of the two forms, e.g. "Cæsar's hatred," or "the hatred of Cæsar."

Lastly, a subjective or objective genitive may be general or particular, permanent or casual. In the former event, an adjective can in very many cases be substituted.

e.g. God's love = the Divine love.

The king's banner = the royal banner.

But one does not speak (except jokingly) of the "royal pocket-handkerchief" or "the 'divine' love (of Zeus) for Semele."

In Russian we find the simplicity of French with the accuracy attempted by English, which has a rich stock of adjectival forms.

(1) *Subjective genitives* (nearly always possessive).

When *general*, the adjective of the governing noun is used; when *particular*, the genitive.

e.g. Нога слона раздавила черепъ тигра.

The elephant's leg shattered the tiger's skull.

(Possessive genitive.)

Нога слона почти безъ волосъ.

The elephant's leg is almost hairless.

(Generic genitive.)

Слоновая кость стоитъ дорого.

Ivory [literally, elephant's bone] is dear.

Кавальякъ, убійца Генріха четвёртаго.

Cavaillac, the assassin of Henry IV.

(Objective.)

Иоанновы [наёмные] убійцы.

Iván (the Terrible's) [hired] assassins,

(Subjective.)

Пѣтъкны дни тяну́лись одиооб́разно.

Pétya's days dragged on monotonously.

(Subjective and general.)

Имени́ны Госуда́ря.

The Emperor's birthday (as a mere fact).

Госуда́ревы имени́ны.

The Emperor's birthday (generalized, e.g. as a public holiday).

Зака́тъ со́лнца.

Sunset (as a particular fact on a certain day).

Со́лнечный зака́тъ.

Sunset (as a natural phenomenon).

Солда́тская свирѣ́вость.

Soldiers' savagery (in general).

But Свирѣ́вость солда́тъ.

The soldiers' savagery (in particular).

Входъ въ дво́рецъ.*

The entrance of the palace (in particular).

But Дво́рцовые вхо́ды стро́го охра́няются солда́тами.

Palace entrances are strictly guarded by soldiers (in general).

Доро́га (or шоссе́) къ Москвѣ́; отъ Москвѣ́.

The Moscow high-road (direction to or from).

* I.e. in a direction; cf. English "the entrance into the station." But in French only "l'entrée de la gare," "la route de Versailles."

Москóвскія доро́ги о́чень хороши́.

The Moscow roads are very fine.

Морскóе дно.

The bottom of the sea (generally).

Дно мо́ря.

The bottom of the sea (particularly).

Я жи́лъ въ отцо́вскомъ до́мѣ.

I lived in my father's house (with my parents).

Я жи́лъ въ до́мѣ отца́.

I lived in my father's house (i.e. his, not mine
or Mr. Smith's).

(2) *Objective genitives.*

These, too, may be general or particular, but the word in the genitive cannot be adjectivally expressed.

However, Russian avoids ambiguity by using the genitive or any other case with a suitable preposition, e.g. such as would be required by the verb corresponding to the governing noun.

e.g. Кре́стья́нская лю́бовь къ пёстрымъ украше́нιάмъ.

The peasant love of gaudy ornaments
(general proposition).

Лю́бовь э́того́ му́жчины́ къ же́щчинамъ.

This man's love of woman (in particular).

Не́нависть къ Цéзарю.

The hatred of Cæsar (felt against Cæsar).

(Contrast не́нависть Цéзаря the hate Cæsar
— felt.)

У него́ сѣльная любѡвь къ искѹству.

He has a great love of art.

Убѣйство Эдуарда второ́го.

The murder of Edward II.

Наде́жды Пѣти на повыше́нія.

Peter's hopes of promotion (in particular).

(Пѣтины in general.)

Разска́зчикъ э́той ска́зки.

The narrator of this fairy tale.

Ска́зочный ры́царь.

A fairy knight.

In conclusion.—(1) The possessive or other adjectival form must be substituted for the noun in the genitive in all phrases, where the sense is generalized.

(2) When the genitive is objective, the relationship is usually more closely defined by a proper preposition; but the possessive adjective is almost always inadmissible.

(3) In Russian, except for the proclitic pronouns *его́, ея́, ихъ*, the genitive always *follows* the noun.

(4) The possessive adjective is *also* used to avoid a *succession* of genitives.

e.g. Моги́ла Вѣры находи́лась въ глуби́нѣ кладби́ща.

Vera's grave was at the bottom of the cemetery.

But подро́бности Вѣриной сме́рти.

The details of Vera's death (*"de la mort de Véra"*).

(ii) There exists a partitive genitive [v. § 24 (1)] in "y" with some nouns of the second declension,

and a distinction is made which can only be learnt by practice; generally speaking, when quantity, not quality, is implied, the form in “y” is preferred to that in “a.”

e.g. Пода́йте мнѣ ча́ю.

Give me some tea (donnez-moi du thé).

Два фунта са́хару.

Two pounds of sugar.

У насъ есть два сорта ча́я.

We have two sorts of tea.

(iii) The genitive (and similarly the dative) frequently replaces the English nominative, in the impersonal constructions, for which the Russian language has a predilection. —

e.g. За́втра, мо́жетъ-бы́ть меня́ не бу́детъ здѣсь.

To-morrow, may-be I shall not be here;
literally, “there will not be of me here.”

Мнѣ не хо́чется спать.

I do not want to go to sleep.

Его́ нѣтъ до́ма.

He is not at home.

(iv) The genitive is replaced by the dative, in many instances, of ownership or possession.

e.g. Цѣна́ э́тимъ ло́шадямъ двѣсти ру́блей.

The price of these horses is 200 roubles.

Онъ мнѣ ста́рый дру́гъ.

He is an old friend.

Such sentences are really instances of the *daticus commodi*.

(v) The genitive is used after comparatives
[cf. § 38, V.]

e.g. Дядя моложе своей племянницы.

The uncle is younger than his niece.

Россія въ семнадцать разъ больше Франціи.

Russia is seventeen times bigger than France.

(vi) The genitive is the objective case, as stated
in § 69, III. *obj. is genitive case*

(vii) The genitive is used after the adjectives and
verbs denoting *fulness, worthiness, deprivation, fear, desire,*
expectancy, and value.

e.g. Жизнь полна горя.

Life is full of sorrow.

Онъ достоинъ наказанія.

He deserves to be punished.

Вашъ вопросъ касается выше-изложенныхъ
пунктовъ.

Your question touches points previously
defined.

Я прошу вашего прощенья.

I beg for your forgiveness.

Онъ лишился жизни.

He deprived himself of life (committed
suicide).

Судъ лишилъ Петра Ивановича всехъ правъ
состоянія.

The court deprived Peter Ivánovič of all
rights of position (civil rights).

Все люди желаютъ здоровья.

Everybody desires health.

Я боюсь грома и молніи.
I fear thunder and lightning.
Это стоит денегъ.
This costs money.

But if the price is stated, the accusative.

e.g. Бумага стоитъ три рубля пудъ.
Paper costs three roubles a *pud*.
Никогда не ожидалъ такого счастья.
I never expected such luck.

(viii) To denote dates on which.

e.g. Третьяго дня Анна умерла.
On the day before yesterday Ann died.
Шестнадцатаго декабря.
On the 16th December.

(ix) In all cases where the object of the verb is impliedly partitive, i.e. the word "some" might be added, or when in French the "partitive article" *du, des*, would be used.

e.g. Припесите вина. Bring some wine here.
Apportez du vin.

So, too, after all words of quantity.

e.g. мало little, немного a little, довольно enough, etc.

(x) As in Latin to denote *descriptions*.

e.g. Онъ человекъ желѣзной настойчивости.
He is a man of iron persistence (will).
Пётръ Великій былъ высокаго роста.
Peter the Great was a man of great height.
Онъ былъ тогда шестидесяти лѣтъ.
He was then sixty years old.
(Or, ему было тогда шестьдесятъ лѣтъ.)

V. *The Dative.*

As in other languages, the dative marks the personal relation or effect.

e.g. **Мнѣ** полезно читать по-ру́сски.

It is useful to me to read Russian.

The dative is also extensively used instead of the genitive. [v. § 69, IV. (iv).]

As in Latin, French, German, and other languages, many verbs which in English take a direct object are intransitive and take the dative.

e.g. **грози́ть кому́** threaten

удивля́ться чему́ be surprised

зави́довать кому́ or **чему́** envy

смѣ́яться чему́ to rejoice at a thing (but

смѣ́яться надъ кѣмъ of a person)

вѣ́рить кому́ or **чему́** believe (but **вѣ́ровать**

въ Го́да believe in God)

Other instances of verbs requiring a dative are:—

жа́ловаться кому́ на кого́ to complain to A of B

моли́ться кому́ за что́ to pray to someone for something

кла́няться кому́ to greet (to bow down to)

мсти́ть кому́ за что́ to take vengeance on somebody for something

напомина́ть что́ кому́ to remind somebody of something

учи́ть кого́ чему́ to teach somebody something

учи́ться чему́ to learn something

But only practice can supply a full knowledge of such usages.

e.g. Чемъ вы смѣетесь?

What are you making merry of?

Я вѣрю только математическимъ доказательствамъ.

I believe only mathematical proofs.

Я смѣюсь надъ вашимъ высокомеріемъ.

I smile at your arrogance.

Отсюда грозить мы будемъ Шведу.

From this spot we shall threaten the Swede.

Мы удивились его скорому возвращенію.

We were astonished at his swift return.

Я завидую вашему богатству.

I envy your wealth.

Я завидую Ротшильду.

I envy Rothschild.

VI. *The Instrumental.*

This case denotes the *instrument by which* something is done, or the *agent by whom* something is done.

Thus :—(1) It is used after passive verbs.

e.g. Царь былъ помазанъ архіепіскопомъ.

The Tsar was anointed by the archbishop.

Царь былъ помазанъ мѣромъ.

The Tsar was anointed with the chrism.

(2) It also denotes the means by which a thing is done or made.

e.g. Деревья рубятъ топорами.

Trees are cleft with axes.

(3) It is used predicatively (like the dative in Latin) after verbs of becoming, or *быть* in the past tense.

e.g. *Ивѣнъ былъ моимъ слугою.*

John used to be my servant.

Онъ сдѣлался больнымъ.

He made himself ill.

Hence such irregular concords may arise as: *онъ называлъ меня дуракомъ* he called me a fool.

(4) It is used to denote the mode or manner where we in English should say "like . "

e.g. *Орёлъ летѣлъ стрѣлою.*

The eagle flew like an arrow.

Онъ воображаетъ себя великимъ государемъ.

He fancies himself a mighty emperor.

(5) The instrumental is also used with words of measure.

e.g. *Онъ продолжалъ идти мѣрнымъ шагомъ.*

He continued to go at a regular pace.

Море здѣсь глубиною въ десять саженъ.

The sea is here 10 sazens deep.

Температура больного повысилась двумя градусами.

The patient's temperature has gone up two degrees.

But Этотъ садъ на аршинъ шире твоего.

This garden is an arsin broader than yours.

Моё яблоко въ двадцать разъ слаще твоего.

My apple is twenty times sweeter than that one.

(6) The instrumental is used with words of quality.

e.g. *Этотъ тюремщикъ добръ душою.*

This gaoler is kindly in soul (has a kindly soul).

(7) The instrumental is used to denote *time in which* something happens; e.g. *зимою* in the winter, *весною* in the spring, *ночью* at night, *утромъ* in the morning.

(8) Many verbs, especially those denoting *using, governing, naming*, are followed by the instrumental. These can only be acquired by practice.

Such are :	пользоваться	to use
	называться	to be called
	владѣть	to govern
	гордиться	to boast of
	жертвовать	to sacrifice
	править	to guide
	слыть	to be reputed as
	избирать	to be elected

e.g. *Солдаты жертвуютъ жизнью за отчизну.*

Soldiers sacrifice their lives for their country.

Я горжусь своими родителями.

I boast of my parents. Я горжусь своими родителями.

Его назначили (избрали) опекуномъ.

They have appointed (chosen) him as guardian.

Онъ не владѣетъ своимъ роднымъ языкомъ.

He does not understand his own language.

VII. *The Locative.*

In modern Russian this case is never used except with the prepositions *при, въ, о, на, по*. Hence it is often called the prepositional.

§ 70. TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

Governing one case only:—

Object, * v. § 69, III.		Genitive.		Dative.		Instr.	Loc.	Verbal Prefixes.		
Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Simple.	Used with Nouns and Verbs.	With Verbs only.	
про	сквозь	безъ	близъ	мно	къ	вопреки	надъ	въ	подъ	воз
черезъ		до	вдоль	около				до	предъ	вы
		изъ	внѣсто	позади				за	при	пере
		изъ-за	внутри	подлѣ				изъ	про	пре
		изъ-подъ	внѣ	послѣ				на	съ	разъ
		отъ	вокругъ	ради				надъ	у	
		у	возлѣ	сверху				о		
			для	противъ				отъ		
			кромѣ	среди				по		
			кругомъ							

Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

	за					за	Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.	
							безъ	черезъ
	подъ					подъ		
	предъ					предъ		

Governing Objective and Locative :—

въ						въ		
на						на		
о						о		

Governing Objective, Dative, Locative :—

по					по			
----	--	--	--	--	----	--	--	--

Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

съ		съ				съ		
----	--	----	--	--	--	----	--	--

Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—

		межъ, у				межъ, у		
--	--	---------	--	--	--	---------	--	--

* I.e. accusative of inanimate objects; genitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -у, -ю of nouns in -а, -я.

§ 71. THE PREPOSITIONS.

Preliminary.

I. In order further to assert the relationships of nouns and verbs, as in other languages the cases are not sufficient. They have to be more accurately and extensively defined by means of prepositions.

II. Prepositions and particles are either simple or adverbial, e.g. in English “by” and “beside.”

III. Most simple prepositions are compounded with verbs; but *черезъ* through, *къ* to, *безъ* without, cannot be thus used; nor are *воз-* up, *вы-* out, *непе-* again, *пре-* in excess, used except with verbs.

IV. Most prepositions govern only one case, some govern two, and some three.

V. The prepositions and the cases they govern are all stated in the Table § 70.

VI. Prepositions governing the objective take the accusative (or nominative) of inanimate things, and the genitive of living things [v. § 69, III.].

In a few instances only the older practice survives of a preposition taking the accusative with nouns denoting a living being; e.g. the idiomatic use of *въ* in *въ гóсти*, *въ ня́ньки*, to be a guest, nurse, etc.

VII. Monosyllabic prepositions preceding monosyllabic nouns (including under this designation disyllabic nouns in liquids, e.g. *гóродъ*, *бéрегъ* [v. § 5 (5)])

or dissyllabic nouns of the second declension often accent the preposition, especially in adverbial phrases.

e.g. на́ полъ on to the floor

на́ воду on to the water

In older Russian this rule was much more general.
[v. § 80.]

§ 72. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Three prepositions govern only the accusative:
черезъ (or чрезъ), про, сквозь.

про means "for," "concerning."

e.g. Всякъ про себя, а Госно́дь про всѣхъ.

Each for himself, but the Lord for all.

Про когó говори́шь?

Of whom are you speaking?

Combined with verbs it gives the idea of thoroughness.

e.g. Прочита́ть to read through.

сквозь right through.

e.g. Гвоздь́ сквозь до́ску прошёлъ.

The nail has gone right through (pierced) the board.

Онъ пройде́тъ невреди́мымъ сквозь́ огóнь и во́ду.
He will pass through fire and water unscathed.

Смотрѣ́ть на что́ сквозь́ пальцы́.

To look through the finger (i.e. overlook).

Онъ прошёлъ́ сквозь́ огóнь и во́ду и мѣдныя́ тру́бы.

He passed through fire, water, and brazen tubes [proverb: i.e. every danger] [or че́резъ . . .].

чѣрезъ through and across.

e.g. Чѣрезъ рѣку across the river.

Чѣрезъ стекло видно.

One can see [видно it is visible] through glass.

Чѣрезъ него многіе пострадали.

Through him many have suffered.

Я у него буду чѣрезъ недѣлю.

I shall be with him in one week.

§ 73 (1). PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE ONLY.

These prepositions always govern the genitive; not merely the objective case.

безъ without.

e.g. Безъ денегъ without money.

Безъ надежды without hope.

близъ* near.

e.g. Близъ города near the town.

Близъ моего мужа стояла Настасья.

Nastasya was standing near my husband.

вдоль along.

e.g. Вдоль улицы along the street.

вмѣсто† instead of.

e.g. Вмѣсто веселія горе было.

It was woe instead of joy.

внутри* inside.

e.g. Внутри чемодана inside the portmanteau.

внѣ* outside.

e.g. Внѣ Европы outside Europe.

* Whence adjectives ближій, внутренній, внѣшній.

† Not to be confused with the adverb вмѣстѣ together; e.g. вмѣстѣ съ тобою together with you.

вѣзмѣ beside.

e.g. Вѣзмѣ печи beside the stove.

вѣкрѣмъ or крѣгомъ round.

e.g. Вѣкрѣмъ церкви round the church.

для for the purpose of.

e.g. Для лѣченія for the purpose of being healed.

до defines the limit "up to which."

e.g. До старости дожилъ.

He lived up to old age.

Читай отъ начала до конца.

Read from the beginning to the end.

Отъ Лондона до Парижа.

From London to Paris.

До полудня.

Until mid-day or before mid-day.

До Рождества Христова.

B.c., i.e. up to or before the birth of Christ.

До Царя Николая Николаевича.

Before Tsar Nicholas Nikoláyevič.

Нѣхъ было до десяти.

There were up to (or about) ten of them.

до in compound verbs gives a sense of finishing ;
e.g. дочитать to read to the end.

изъ from, out of.

e.g. Изъ огня out of the fire.

Изъ дружбы out of friendship.

изъ is scarcely ever used in measurements of time
(*с. отъ*).

изъ-за up out of.

e.g. Сѣнце вышло изъ-за лѣсу.

The sun rose out of the wood.

Изъ-за неѣ "Thanks to her . . "

изъ-подъ from under.

e.g. Изъ-подъ менѣ взяли стулъ.

They took my chair from under me.

изъ in composition with verbs retains its original meaning.

Before heavy consonants it becomes изо; e.g. изожда́тъ to await.

Before soft vowels it retains the ъ; e.g. изъѣденный (молю) moth-eaten.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded ис; e.g. истрáтить to squander.

кро́мѣ besides.

e.g. Кро́мѣ такихъ примѣровъ.

Besides such examples.

Кро́мѣ лошадей онъ завёлъ ещё автомоби́ль.

Besides his horses he brought a motor.

Кро́мѣ того́ in addition to this.

The "gerundive" or undeclined participle, *исключáя*, is used absolutely to mean "except, excepting"; e.g. *исключáя англича́нъ никако́и наро́дъ свободо́нъ* excepting the English no nation is free.

ми́мо past an object. .

e.g. Орёлъ летѣлъ ми́мо моего́ сада.

The eagle flew past my garden.

о́коло about.

e.g. О́коло двора́ round about the courtyard.

О́коло пяти́ часо́въ about five o'clock.

вокру́гъ signifies rather "encircling" all the way round.

e.g. Вокру́гъ моего́ до́ма фрукто́вый садъ.

There is an orchard all round my house.

отъ out of, from.

e.g. Отъ княже́нія Влади́мирова.

From the time of Vladímir's reign.

Я получи́лъ подáрокъ отъ ма́тери.

I received a present from my mother.

Я покраснѣ́лъ отъ стыда́.

I blushed for shame.

отъ, as distinguished from изъ, indicates the source whence, rather than motion whence.

e.g. Доро́га отъ Москвы́ до Петрогра́да.

The road from Moscow to Petrograd.

But Онъ при́халъ изъ Москвы́.

He arrived from Moscow.

отъ corresponds more with the Latin *ab*; изъ with *ex*.

When compounded with verbs, отъ, like изъ, retains its meaning, and changes to ото, отъ.

e.g. Ото́рва́ться to tear oneself free.

Отѣ́хать to drive away.

Отѣ́здъ departure.

пóдлѣ means the same as во́злѣ.

позади́ behind.

e.g. Позади́ дере́вни behind the village.

послѣ after (in time or order).

e.g. Послѣ ухóда отъ дóлжности.

After retirement from service.

Послѣ королѣи вошѣлъ егó слуга́.

After the king his servant entered.

прóтивъ against or opposite to.

e.g. Прóтивъ дворца́ стои́тъ собóръ.

Opposite to the palace stands the cathedral.

Росси́я бо́рется прóтивъ Нѣмцевъ.

Russia is fighting against the Germans.

ра́ди for the sake of.

e.g. Ра́ди твоёй ма́тери.

For the sake of your mother.

сверхъ besides.

e.g. Сверхъ рáзума beyond reason.

Сверхъ жа́лованья, получа́етъ награ́ду.

In addition to a salary, he gets an emolument.

Сверхъ того́ furthermore.

средѣ́ or посре́дѣ́ in the middle of.

e.g. Посре́дѣ́ о́строва in the middle of the island.

Other adverbial phrases are also used with the genitive, but need not be noticed here.

у means "at," "by" (of place).

e.g. У де́ла at work.

У ногъ когó at one's feet.

y with the verb *есть* replaces the verb "to have."

e.g. *У меня есть хлѣбъ.* [v. § 87].

I have a loaf.

У себя ли баринъ?

Is your master at home?

y with the personal pronouns, or proper names, has much the same force as the Latin *apud* or the French *chez*.

e.g. *У Петровыхъ всегда хорошій обѣдъ.*

They dine well at the Petróvs.

In composition with verbs its use can hardly be profitably defined.

§ 73 (2). THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Of these there are only two.

къ can be used with some nouns to indicate approximate time.

e.g. *Къ вечеру* toward evening.

Otherwise *къ* merely amplifies the ordinary meaning of the dative "to" or "for."

e.g. *Къ берегу* to the bank.

Пришлю книгу къ нему.

I will send the book to him.

къ is never combined with verbs. When used with nouns, the consonant *к* is merely sounded in front, like *l'* and *d'* in French: "*l'âme*," "*d'autres*." Before dentals and gutturals *къ* is softened to *х* in pronunciation; e.g. *къ тому* is sounded *хтому́*; *къ дому*, *хдо́му*.

Before heavy initial consonants къ is sounded, and is sometimes written, ко.

e.g. Ко двору́ to the courtyard.

Similar rules apply to въ and съ, which may be written and sounded во and со.

Вопреки́ in spite of.

Вопреки́ егó старáнiямъ despite his endeavours.

§ 74. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

надъ means “above,” “over.”

e.g. Надъ землею over the earth.

Братъ верхъ надъ кѣмъ (чѣмъ) to overcome someone.

Божья воля надо мною.

God's will over me.

Бѣда́ виситъ надъ егó голово́й.

Sorrow hangs over his head.

между may be added to this paragraph, as it is only occasionally used with the genitive. It means “between.”

e.g. Сидѣть между двухъ стульевъ — положёніе Румыніи.

Sitting on the fence [between two chairs]— Roumania's situation.

Между двумя деревьями было окно́.

There was a window between two trees.

It can also have a derived meaning, “among.”

§ 75. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE LOCATIVE.

One preposition, при, governs the locative and no other case. при originally meant “at.”

e.g. При до́мѣ near, by the house.

При ко́мѣ in the presence of.

При свидѣ́телях before witnesses.

При Никола́ѣ Алекса́ндровичѣ.

In the reign (*or* time) of Nicholas Aleksán-drovič.

Онъ при заво́дѣ.

He works in the factory.

Онъ былъ адюта́нтомъ при Ско́белевѣ.

He was adjutant to Skóbolev.

Also causal—

e.g. При бога́тствѣ возно́симся.

In prosperity we enhance ourselves.

The meaning of при, when compounded with verbs, is best learnt by practice; no rule can be conveniently stated.

§ 76. подъ, предъ, and за.

These govern the accusative and instrumental; the former when motion is implied, the latter when a state of rest is implied (cf. *in* in Latin or German).

I. за primarily means “behind,” also “beyond.”

With the accusative:—

e.g. Ё́хать за гра́ницу.

To travel beyond the frontier, i.e. abroad.

Мнѣ да́вно ꙗ́ сорокъ лѣтъ.

I am long past forty years old.

За́ десять лѣтъ своѣй слѹжбы пріобрѣ́лъ большѹю
о́пытность.

In ten years' service he gained great experi-
ence.

Notice also :—

Мы саж́ались за сто́лъ.

We were sitting down at the table.

Also with verbs of “holding,” “grasping.”

e.g. Его́ взяли за́ руку.

They seized him by the hand.

Меня́ держали́ за плéчи.

They held me by the shoulders.

In combination with что, за means “what a . . . !”

e.g. Что́ за шумъ ! what a noise !

Also “for the sake of.”

e.g. Мѹченики́ ѹмерли́ за́ истину́.

The martyrs died for truth.

Моли́сь за́ отца́.

Pray for your father.

And “in price.”

e.g. Прóдалъ кни́гу за́ четы́ре рубля́.

I sold a book for four roubles.

With the instrumental :—

e.g. Э́тотъ господи́нъ живётъ за́ грани́цею.

This gentleman lives abroad.

За́ са́домъ behind the garden.

Я саж́лъ за́ столóмъ.

I sat at the table.

Or “giving the reason.”

e.g. За непре́здѣломъ отца мы отложи́ли нашу по́ездку.

On account of my father's non-arrival we postponed our excursion.

За́чѣмъ? why?

Also with verbs of “fetching.”

e.g. Меня́ посла́ли за са́харомъ.

They sent me to fetch the sugar.

за, in composition with verbs, expresses an incipient action [v. § 59, VI.], but sometimes a completed action, e.g. засну́ть go to sleep, запла́тить to pay up; in composition with nouns, expresses “at the back of,” “behind”; e.g. за́городный suburban (also при́городъ suburb).

II. подъ properly means “under”; with the accusative implying motion, with the instrumental static.

e.g. Я бро́силъ егѡ по́дъ столъ.

I threw him under the table.

Онъ лежи́тъ подъ пе́чью.

He is lying under the stove.

In regard to *time*.

e.g. Э́то случи́лось по́дъ вечеръ.

This happened in the evening (cf. Latin *sub vespere*).

Also in derivative senses.

e.g. Подъ э́тими усло́віями не могу́ подписа́ться.

Under these conditions I cannot give my signature.

III. предъ or пе́редъ means “before” (of place, and of time).

The accusative and instrumental similarly refer to motion or rest.

e.g. Я яви́лся пе́редъ судья́й.

I appeared before the judges.

Пе́редъ воро́тами стои́тъ два столба́.

In front of the gates there stand two columns.

Пре́дъ зако́номъ всѣ ра́вны.

All are equal before the law.

Observe the adverbs въпереди́ in front, въперёдъ forward, напереди́ beforehand.

подъ and предъ, when compounded with verbs, conserve their meaning.

e.g. поднима́ть	подня́ть	raise
подпира́ть	подперёть	prop up
представа́ть	предста́ть	stand before
представля́ть	предста́вить	to present

Like отъ, подъ and предъ keep the ъ before soft vowels, and предъ changes to преду before heavy consonants.

e.g. Предъяви́ть to present.

Преду́смотрѣ́ть to foresee.

Поду́жда́ть to nibble, eat from below.

Преду́смотрѣ́ть всѣ́ ме́ючи.

To foresee all details.

Предъяви́ть ве́ксель къ́ взыска́нію.

To present a bill for payment.

Онъ́ поду́халъ на́ коня́.

He came by on horseback.

§ 77. THE PREPOSITIONS **въ**, **о**, AND **на**.

These govern the accusative and locative ; the accusative as usual relating to motion, the locative to a state of rest.

I. **въ** primarily means “in.” It is sounded as a part of the following word, like **къ** and **съ**, and similarly may, if the following word have heavy initial consonants, be altered to **во**.

въ with the *accusative* is primarily “into.”

e.g. (1) **Иванъ вошёлъ въ комнату.**

John went into the room.

Я ѣздилъ въ Оренбуръ.

I travelled to Orenburg.

(2) It is used in statements of time.

e.g. **Во время путешествія я скучалъ.**

I was bored during the journey.

Въ пять лѣтъ окончѹ мой трудъ.

In five years I shall finish my work.

Въ понедѣльникъ онъ Monday.

(Distinguish **по понедѣльникамъ** every Monday.)

Въ девять часо́въ at nine o'clock.

Три́жды въ день three times a day.

(Distinguish **въ девя́томъ часу́** in the ninth hour ;
i.e. between eight and nine.)

(3) And in statements of price, measure, etc.

e.g. **Доро́га въ восемна́дцать вѣрстъ.**

A road eighteen versts long.

(4) One idiomatic use with the accusative plural should be remarked, viz. :—

Меня́ зва́ли въ го́сти.

They invited me as a guest.

Онъ поше́лъ въ офице́ры.

He has become an officer.

Постригу́сь въ мона́хи.

I shall take the tonsure as a monk.

In this idiomatic use the accusative, and not the genitive, is used as the objective case [v. § 71, VI.].

(5) Similarly :—

Сынъ въ отца́.

The son is like his father.

въ with the *locative* means (1) “in.”

e.g. Ба́ринъ въ столо́вой.

Master is in the dining-room.

(2) “in,” in measurements of time.

e.g. Въ сентя́брь мѣ́сяцѣ́ in September.

Въ ты́сяча де́вятъсо́тъ пѣ́тнадцатомъ́ го́дѣ́ in
1915.*

(3) “in,” in measurements of distance.

e.g. Мо́я дѣ́ча отсю́да въ трѣ́хъ верста́хъ.

My estate is three versts away.

(4) After certain verbs.

e.g. Ка́яться въ грѣ́хѣ́хъ to repent one's sins.

Признава́ться въ оши́бкѣ́ to confess a mistake.

Обвиня́ть ко́го въ уби́йствѣ́ to convict of
murder.

* In these phrases го́дѣ́ cannot be omitted, and no other locative form is admissible.

In composition **въ** conserves its meaning.

e.g. **Входи́ть** to enter.

The original form **во** is kept in some accented adverbs; e.g. **во́сче** altogether. [v. § 80.]

With verbs commencing with a soft vowel **въ** is still hard and written **въ**.

e.g. **Въѣ́хать** (*vyékhæt'*) to drive in.

II. The preposition **на** primarily means "on."

With the accusative.

e.g. (1) **Я ходи́лъ на пло́щадь.**

I went on to the square.

Палъ тумáнь на сыру́ю зéмлю.

A mist fell on the damp earth.

Я положи́лся на теб́я.

I relied on you.

(2) In reference to time.

На четвёртый де́нь on the fourth day.

Отпущу́ теб́я на три часа́.

I will let you go for three hours (**до трёхъ часа́** until 3 o'clock).

(3) In reference to the effect produced.

Ку́шайте на здо́ровье.

Eat for your health, i.e. may it do you good.

Я слѣ́довалъ ему́ на злó.*

I followed him to do him hurt.

* Or на́ зло.

- (4) "Against," "in respect of."

Я сердѣлся на Григоріа.

I got angry with Gregory.

Не жалу́йся на твоѣго́ брата́.

Do not make complaints with respect to
(against) your brother.*With the locative.*

- e.g. (1) Ва́ша кнѣ́га на столѣ́.

Your book is on the table.

- (2) In words denoting time.

На Рождествѣ́.

On Christmas day.

- (3) In words indicating the points of the compass.

На сѣ́верѣ́ in the North.

- (a) Мои́ братъ́ жени́лся на французкѣ́
-
- племянница́ кото́рой вы́йдётъ́ за́мужъ́ за
-
- ру́скаго по́дданнаго́.

My brother has married a Frenchwoman
whose niece is going to marry a Russian
subject.

- (β) И́грали въ́ карты́.

They were playing cards.

И́грали въ́ ша́хматы́.

They were playing chess (i.e. a *game*).*But* И́грали на скри́пкѣ́.They were playing the violin (the musical
instrument).

(γ) *Observe* на Русѣ or въ Россіи in Russia.

(Русь is a poetical form.)

In composition на has no meaning limited enough to be stated in these pages.

III. The preposition о (оѡ before vowels, оѡо before very heavy initial consonants) primarily means “on” or “against.”

With the accusative.

(1) Онъ удáрился о кáмень he hit against a stone

(2) Оѡ ѣту по́ру at this time.

With the locative.

(1) Concerning, about.

e.g. Мы говорѣли о твоѣмъ несча́стїи.

We were speaking of your misfortune.

(2) Of time (when the time is not exactly stated).

e.g. О Пáсхѣ at Easter.

(3) With numerals, when the objects enumerated are constituents of something else, and not accidental.

e.g. Стулъ о трѣхъ нѡжкахъ a chair with three feet.

(But Стѣна въ три аршѣна a wall-3 aršins high.)

In composition о indicates the completion of the act, and some generality.

e.g. Оѡйтѣ to go round (and survey).

Огляну́ться to glance round.

Before heavy consonants it can take the full form оѡо ; e.g. ободрáть, обдира́ть to flay.

Before verbs beginning in soft vowels it is written and sounded *объ*.

e.g. *Объяснить* to explain.

Объятие, объёмъ, an embrace—the capacity, contents.

Before verbs beginning with *и, ѣ + и* are fused into *ы*; e.g. *обыграть* to beat at play, cf. *сыграть* from *съ + играть* to play (a piece of music or at cards).

As a preposition *объ* is the correct form before words beginning with a vowel, and occasionally *обо* before words with heavy initial consonants.

§ 78. THE PREPOSITIONS *по* AND *съ*.

I. *по*, with the accusative, states the limit in space or time, or the purpose of the action.

e.g. *По край свѣта* to the edge of the world.

Обважй рѹку по-локоть.

Bare your arm up to the elbow.

Мы пробудемъ здѣсь по Пасху.

We shall stay here till Easter.

По сіе время я ничего не слыхалъ.

Up to now I have heard nothing.

По вѣкъ свой (или по смѣртъ) не забуду.

I will not forget (for all my life) up to my death.

Я шёлъ въ лѣсъ по малину.

I went into the wood (to gather) raspberries.

Пошли по воду.

Send for water.

Distributively, *по два, по три, по четыре* [v. § 62, I. and IV. (2)].

Notice—по тѣ стороны, по правую (руку), по лѣвую,
that side, to the right, to the left.

по with the dative indicates extensive space, in
which something happens.

e.g. (1) По горамъ over the hills.

По городу through the town.

Плыть по морю to sail the seas.

Эта трава растёт по оврагамъ.

This herb grows in the ravines.

(2) Distributively—

По утрамъ every morning.

По пяти in fives (and with every number,
except два, три, четыре). [v. § 62, IV.(2).]

По ночамъ every night.

По средамъ every Wednesday.

(3) “According to.”

По-моему* in my opinion.

По старому in the old-fashioned way.

По чину according to rank.

Почему? why?

Потому что because.

по with the locative.

(1) With words of time, means “after.”

e.g. Потомъ thereupon.†

По рождествѣ after Christmas.

По Петрѣ Великомъ after Peter the Great.

* In this single phrase моему is accented моему. So, too, по твоёму, своему. Thus:—

По моему процессу вышло по-моему.

My law-suit came off to my liking.

† Whence потомки, потомство descendants,

(2) "On account of."

e.g. Жена́ по́ мужѣ́ называ́ется.

A woman bears her husband's name.

По́ кому́ вы въ тра́урѣ́?

For whom are you in mourning?

но in composition confers a diminutive sense to the verb [v. § 59, VI.], e.g. поглядыва́ть to glance here and there; or indicates the completion of the actions, e.g. побѣ́тъ to smite down, посла́тъ to send at last.

II. (1) съ with the accusative is used in general measurements of space and time.

e.g. Рублѣ́й съ́ пятко́мъ издержáлъ.

I spent about five roubles.

Тамъ́ я про́жилъ съ́ мѣ́сяцъ.

I stayed there about a month.

Онъ́ ро́стомъ съ́ отца́.

He is about as tall as his father.

Вѣ́рсть со́ сто (съ́ со́тню) бу́детъ.

It will be about 100 versts away.

(2) съ with the genitive has the primal meaning "down from."

e.g. Онъ́ сошѣ́лъ съ́ пла́тформы.

He left the platform.

(изъ implies rather "away from," in space: e.g. по́ѣздъ двину́лся изъ́ Москвѣ́ the train moved out of Moscow.)

Она́ сошла́ съ́ ума́.

She has gone mad (literally, out of her mind).

Съ́ тѣ́хъ поръ́ from that time.

Жду́ со́ дня́ на́ день.

I waited from day to day

It may also have a causal meaning, like *отъ*.

e.g. *Съ тоскѣ* from melancholy.

съ with the instrumental has an entirely different meaning, i.e. "with," "accompanying."

e.g. *Я придѣ съ супругою (супругой).*

I will arrive with my wife.

Онъ дѣлалъ это съ радостью.

He was doing this with pleasure.

Онъ человѣкъ съ умомъ.

He is a man with sense.

Совсѣмъ quite.

Кто говорилъ съ Кузьмой?

Who was speaking to Kuz'má?

In composition *съ* can have either the meaning "from" or "with," e.g. *снимать* to take away, *съѣздить* to travel away; or *соединять* to unite, *сочинять* to compose, *сдѣлать* to finish doing.

Before soft vowels *съ* is retained entire, e.g. *съѣдать* to devour; or, before *и*, amalgamates, e.g. *искать* to search (*съ-искать*); or remains as *со*, e.g. *соединять*.

§ 79. THE VERBAL PREFIXES *воз*, *вы*, *пере*, *пре*, *разъ*.

воз adds the sense of "up" to a verb.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded *вос*, e.g. *воспитать* to educate.

Before verbs beginning with *с* + a consonant it is, however, written *воз* and sounded *вос*, e.g. *возстаніе* insurrection.

In Old Slavonic the form was възъ, hence in modern Russian вз and взо are also met with.

e.g. взлетѣть to fly up
вздуť цѣны to inflate prices

Or before heavy consonants—

e.g. вздирать, but взодрать to tear up
взирать (for взи́рать), but воззрѣть to look up
(Cf. сжечь,* but сожгý to burn utterly.)

Before verbs beginning with soft vowels the з is pronounced and written hard.

e.g. възъѣзжать to drive up

As with other similar prepositions, ѣ + и after is fused into ы.

e.g. возъ + имѣть becomes возымѣть to conceive
(doubts, fears, etc.)

Similarly раз-, разъ-, разы-, разо-, рас-.

вы probably means “out,” and signifies the completion of an act.

e.g. выболѣть to become utterly ill
выбѣжать (perfective) выбѣгать (imperfective)
to run out [v. § 59, IV.]

выгнать drive out, выгонять (imperfective)

вы always takes the tonic accent except as stated in § 59, I. (3), II., and IV., when the imperfective is the

* Sounded žžeč.

iterative of the simple verb, in which the imperfective retains the original accent.

e.g. **вы́просить** to question, **выпра́шивать**
вы́гадать to guess, **выга́дывать**

пере implies repetition, or change.

e.g. **переду́мать** to reconsider
переби́ть to kill many, to massacre
перебыва́ть to be in many places
передопроси́ть to re-examine
перела́мывать to break to pieces
переписа́ть to copy
пересма́тривать to review, survey ; **пересмо́тръ**
 revision

пре implies excellence, and is nearly the same as **предъ** ; with adjectives it forms a superlative.

e.g. **прелюбе́зный** very kindly
превыша́ть to surpass
презира́ть to despise

But it is often merely a bye-form of **пере**.

e.g. **превраща́ть, преврати́ть** to transform

разъ has a motion of scattering or dissipation.

e.g. **разтека́ть** to flow (in various directions)
разстана́вливать to station people apart
разы́гривать to play out to the end
разъѣ́здъ a departure (of many people in
 different directions)
разува́ть to take off one's shoes
разсѣ́вать to sow (scatter seed)
разсма́тривать to survey all round

§ 80. THE ACCENTUATION OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

The general rule is that, as in other languages, prepositions are proclitics, i.e. atonic words pronounced with their noun, which is accented; e.g. “in-the-house,” “on-the-table,” “въ домѣ,” “на столѣ.” But in older Russian, and to a slight extent in modern Russian, certain of the simple prepositions—not the adverbial prepositions—when used with monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, are accented, the noun becoming the *enclitic*.

e.g. на́ столѣ on the side

Further, when particles are used in compound verbs, in some cases the particle takes the accent, the verb becoming enclitic. This *only* applies—

- (1) to the prefix вы [v. § 79 and § 59, IV.];
- (2) to monosyllabic verbs [v. § 49 and § 52, (1) and (2)]

and generally only to the past participle passive.

e.g. прожѣть	про́житый	to live through
начѣть	начѣлъ*	to begin
избѣть	избѣранъ	to select
нанѣть	нанѣлъ and нанѣтъ	to hire†
назѣть	на́званъ	called
подѣть	по́дданный	a subject (of a State)

This list contains some of the most important phrases in which the old accentuation of the preposition

* But past part. pass. начѣтый.

† So, too, all dissyllabic compounds of -ѣть.

survives. It will be observed the words are nearly all monosyllables, or dissyllables with liquids, such as бѣрегъ shore [v. § 5 (5)], or dissyllabic feminines, and that the usage is practically confined to the accusative.

Verbs that accent the preposition are also monosyllabic.

The forms accenting the particle are mostly used in set phrases, like adverbs.

e.g. на́ бокъ (or на бѣ́къ) to one side
 на́ берегъ (or на бѣ́регъ) to the shore
 на́ голо (of weapons) naked
 на́ голову (or на го́лову) on to the head
 на́ ду́шу (or на ду́шу) into the mind
 на́ землю (or на зѣ́млю) on to the earth
 на́ зло (or на злѣ́) in despite
 на́ полъ on to the floor
 на́ поле (or на по́ле) on to the field
 на́ ночь for a night
 на́смѣхъ (to hold up) to ridicule
 на́чисто (to wipe) clean

So, too, in verbs.

e.g. на́нялъ I hired
 за́нялъ (за́нять) busied
 прѣ́данный devoted
 прѣ́данный betrayed
 из́бранъ selected
 на́званный called

* Similarly with the *negative* не : не́ данъ,
 не́ бра́тъ, не́ было, не́ пи́лъ.

перели́лъ (or перели́ль) overflowed
 о́тдалъ (óddal) he has given away
 про́жилъ he has lived through

Other instances are :—

по́ лу́гу (по лу́гу) over the meadow
 по́ морю́ (по мо́рю) over the sea
 по́ бере́гу (по бе́регу) along the bank
 во́все at all
 изъ лѣсу out of the wood
 о́ землю́ (о зе́млю) against the ground
 за́ ногу́ by the leg
 у́ моря́ (у мо́ря) by the sea

No very general rule can be stated. In modern Russian the preposition is sometimes accented before simple monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, mostly when used with the accusative.

§ 81. THE NUMERALS.

Under this head it is proposed to enumerate some idiomatic uses of the numerals.

I. *The date* (числѡ), *days* (дни), etc.

The days of the week (недѣля) are :—

Понеде́льникъ	Monday (Недѣ́ля, Church Slavonic for Sunday)
Вторни́къ	Tuesday
Среда́	Wednesday (i.e. the middle)
Четве́ргъ	Thursday (i.e. the fourth day)*
Пя́тница	Friday (i.e. the fifth day)
Суббо́та	Saturday (i.e. the Sabbath)
Воскре́сенье	Sunday (literally "Resurrection")
Недѣ́ля	the week

* In ecclesiastical parlance, четве́ргокъ.

The months (мѣсяцъ) are :—

Январь	January	(января, etc., accenting termination)
Февраль	February	(февраля, etc.)
Мартъ	March	(марта, etc.)
Апрѣль	April	(апрѣля, etc.)
Май	May	(мая, etc.)
Іюнь	June	(іюня, etc.)
Іюль	July	(іюля, etc.)
Августъ	August	(августа, etc.)
Сентябрь	September	(сентября, etc.)
Октябрь	October	(октября, etc.)
Ноябрь	November	(ноября, etc.)
Декабрь	December	(декабря, etc.)

The calendar of the Greek Church is still used in Russia, and is now thirteen days behind the Julian or Western calendar.

Instances are given of the use of these words, illustrating the rules.

e.g. Которое (какое) число у насъ сегодня ?
What is the date to-day ?

Шестнадцатое января.
The 16th of January.

Пятница двадцать пятого (пятое) марта.
Friday the 25th of March.

Do not use capitals in designating the days and months.

When the year is mentioned, the year and number all go into the genitive, unless the day is named.

e.g. Средá (въ средý) тpидцáть пёрвое мáрта тýсяча
восьмь-соть сóрокъ восьмóго гóда.

Wednesday the 31st March 1848.

But Девятнáдцатого февралí тýсяча восьмьсоть
шестдесáть пёрваго гóда.

The 19th of February 1861.

These would be commonly abbreviated :—

e.g. Средá (въ средý) 31-ое мáрта 1848 г.

19-го февралí 1861 г.

Generally both dates are indicated.

e.g. 25/12 iii. 15.

II. *Age.* The following instances illustrate the rules :—

Скóлько Ивáшку (Ивáну) лѣтъ ?

How old is Iváško ?

Какóй вóзраст Áнны Петрóвны ?

How old is Ánna Petróvna ?

Ей шестьдесáтъ лѣтъ.

She is sixty years old.

Онá родилáсь восьмóго мáя тýсяча восьмьсоть
сóрокъ вторóго гóда.

She was born on the 8th May 1842

Емý идѣть двáдцáть пёрвый годъ

He is in his twenty-first year.

Мнѣ тpидцáть лѣтъ óтpоду.

I am thirty years old.

Емý бóлье двáдцáти-восьмí лѣтъ

He is over twenty-eight.

Емý ужé зá сорокъ лѣтъ.

He is over forty.

III. In forming compound nouns and adjectives in which the first element is a numeral, the rule is to use the genitive of the numeral, e.g. *двухъ-этажный* two-storeyed; *двугривенникъ** twenty copecks; *трѣхъ-головый змѣй* a three-headed dragon; *четырёхсотый* the 400th; *двадцатилѣтний* twenty years old; *пятиугольникъ* pentagon, etc.; except *тысячелѣтне* millennium, and compounds with *сто*, such as *столѣтне* century.

IV. *The time of day.*

The Russian for hour is *часъ*; for a watch or clock *часы* (plural).

The following sentences give the rules:—

Какойъ теперь часъ на вашихъ часахъ?

What time is it by your watch?

Сколько теперь времени? What is the time now?

Сколько пробило? What time was it that struck?

Теперь два часа. It is now two o'clock.

Сейчасъ шесть часовъ. It is now six o'clock.

Сейчасъ не больше семи часовъ.

It is not more than seven o'clock.

Сейчасъ одна минута пятаго.

It is one minute past four.

Сейчасъ четверть пятаго. It is a quarter past four.

Сейчасъ половина пятаго. It is half past four.

Сейчасъ тридцать девять третьяго.

It is 39 minutes past two.

Сейчасъ три четверти третьяго.

It is a quarter to three.

* *дву* Old Russian for *двухъ*.

Сейчасъ безъ четверти дѣвать.

It is a quarter to nine.

Сейчасъ половина одиннадцатаго.

It is half past ten.

Сейчасъ безъ десяти (минуть) двѣнадцать.

It is ten minutes to twelve.

Онъ уѣхалъ въ сорокъ девяти послѣ четырёхъ.

He went away at 4.49.

V. *Fractions.*

There is little to add under this head, but the student must specially note the compounds with *полъ*, *полу*, a half. *полъ* as a regular noun signifies sex or half.*

e.g. мужской *полъ* the male sex
пополамъ by halves

(1) When the compound signifies half of a whole, the nominative has *полъ*- with the substantive in the genitive; the other cases are declined regularly with the prefix *полу*-.

e.g. полчаса half an hour, получаса, получасу, etc.
полверсты half a verst, полуверсты, полуверстѣ

Thus, too, полдень mid-day, полночь midnight; полудня, полуночи, etc.

After the preposition *по*, the locative of полдень is полудни (a relic of the time when день was a feminine like кость); e.g. нѣсколько минутъ по полудни a few minutes after noon.

Thus, too, полтора [v. § 62, IV. (8)].

* Distinguish *полъ* floor, and *полá* skirt.

It is most important to distinguish полднѣ, полночи, half a day, half a night, which signify duration, not a point of time.

In these words *only* the first element is declined, the second already being in the genitive.

e.g. Я бодрствовалъ полднѣ, полночи, полчаса, etc.

I sat up half a day, half a night, half an hour, etc.

In older Russian, as in German, there were other compounds with полу-, for $2\frac{1}{2}$, $3\frac{1}{2}$, etc., viz. полтретьяго, $2\frac{1}{2}$, etc.

These are obsolete. Modern Russian, like English, says два съ половиной, etc. [v. § 62, IV. (8).]

e.g. Послѣ полуминуты этой работы она устала.

After half a minute of this work she was tired.

In this connection the word сутки, сутокъ, may be noticed, meaning the whole day, i.e. 24 hours, including день day and ночь night.

(2) Where “half” is used loosely, and not in terms of strict measurement.

These are compounds prefixed with полу- invariable.

e.g. полуостровъ	a peninsula
полумѣсяцъ	a crescent moon
полутómъ	a half-volume
(but полтóма, полутóма	half of a volume)
полу-официальный	semi-official, etc.

VI. *Russian money.*

The unit is the рубль (рублѣ) or цѣлѣковъ, worth about two shillings. [v. § 4 (9).]

The divisions are as follows :—

90	сорокъ	девяносто	копѣекъ	or	дѣвять	грѣвель
80	„	восьмьдесятъ	„ „	„	восьмь	„
70	„	сѣмьдесятъ	„ „	„	сѣмь	„
60	„	шестьдесятъ	„ „	„	шесть	„
50	„	пятьдесятъ	„ „	„	полтина	or полтинникъ
40	„	сорокъ	„ „	„	четыре	грѣвенника
30	„	тридцать	„ „	„	три	„
25	„	двадцать	пять	„ „	четвертакъ	
20	„	двадцать	„ „	„	двугрѣвенный	
15	„	пятнадцать	„ „	„	пяти-алтынный	
10	„	дѣсять	„ „	„	грѣвенникъ	
5	„	пять	„ „	„	пятачекъ	
3	„	три	копѣйки	„	алтынъ*	
2	„	два	„ „	„	грошъ	
1	„	копѣйка				
$\frac{1}{2}$	„	полкопѣйка		„	дѣнежка	
$\frac{1}{4}$	„	четверть	копѣйки	„	полѹшка	

VII. *Frequencies.*

Besides *однажды*, etc., there are some other locutions that should be noticed.

(1) In the multiplication table *единожды* is used instead of *однажды*, and *четырежды* is retained for this purpose. From five onwards the instrumental of the numeral is used, but is accented *пятью*, *шестью*, *восьмью*, *девятью*, *одиннадцатью*, etc., and *not* on the ultimate, as usual.

* Obsolete.

(2) Before comparatives the forms used are вдвое, втрое, вчетверо, впятеро . . . въ десятеро ; and thenceforward въ одиннадцать разъ, etc.

e.g. Москва по пространству въ двадцать семь разъ больше Серпухова.

Moscow in extent is twenty-one times bigger than Sérpukhov.

VIII. A note should be added that one cardinal has become obsolete, namely тѣмъ or тѣмъ 10,000 (except in some phrases, and as an expression for a multitude). There is a derivative, тѣмникъ a commander of 10,000, and тѣмнѣищій, "multitudinous."

IX. Cards.

The names of the suits and the cards (карты, feminine) may be useful to the student.

The four suits (масть, feminine, third declension) are : hearts червы (червѣй, feminine, third declension) ; diamonds бѣбы (бѣбонъ, feminine) ; spades пѣки (пѣкъ, feminine), and трѣфы (трѣфъ, feminine) clubs. Trumps are козырь (mas.) ; a game without trumps игра въ безкозырьхъ. A trick is взѣтъ, взѣточка ; игрокъ the player.

The cards in each suit are :—

тузъ ace	шестѣрка six	валѣтъ knave
двѣйка deuce	семѣрка seven	дѣма queen
трѣйка three	осьмѣрка eight	корѣль king
четвѣрка four	дѣвѣтка nine	
пятѣрка five	дѣсятка ten	

e.g. корѣль червѣй ; пятѣрка бѣбѣнь ; трѣйка пѣкъ ; дѣвѣтка трѣфъ.

Notice the phrases : играть, сыграть (perfective) въ карты ; проиграть to lose ; выиграть to win (imperfectives проигрывать, выигрывать).

§ 82. THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative Pronouns.*

These are used as in English, **кто** referring to persons, like “who”; **что** to inanimate objects and neuters like “what,” and **который** corresponding to “which.”

Note, however, that in English the genitive precedes the noun by which it is governed ; in Russian it follows.
[v. § 69, IV. (3).]

e.g. John's house. **Домъ Ива́на.**

Thus: **Въ домъ котораго мужика́ ты вошёлъ ?**

Into which peasant's house did you go ?

II. *The Relative Pronouns.*

As in English, the interrogative and relative are now identical in form.

кто is used when the subject is a person, or in correlative and indefinite sentences, answering to **тотъ**, **всякій**, **всѣ**.

e.g. **Тому́, кто лжётъ, не вѣ́рятъ.**

A liar is not believed.

Всѣ, кто при́были, изуми́лись.

All who arrived were astounded.

что is similarly used, when the generality is not personal.

e.g. **Всё что ты сказа́лъ—дура́чество.**

All you have said is folly.

Otherwise, for nouns **ко́рый** is used; and, as always in Russian, the genitive follows and never precedes.

e.g. Опáсности, ко́рымъ я подвергáлся.

The dangers I have risked.

До́мъ, крýша ко́раго снесена́ вѣтрóмъ.

The house the roof of which has been carried off by the wind.

како́й may be substituted, where the sense allows; it means "such as."

Observe.—The relative is *never* omitted as in English. But in common parlance **что** in the nominative tends to replace **кто** and **ко́рый** for all numbers and genders. This is not an admitted literary use.

e.g. Э́то тотъ са́мый ви́щій, что приходи́лъ къ вамъ
у́тромъ.

This is the same beggar as visited you in the morning.

III. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are of two kinds; first, **кто** and **что**, etc., unaccented (cf. in Greek **τις, τι**, contrasted with **τίς, τί**), and next, compounded pronouns with **то**, **ни**, and other particles. [v. § 85 on negative sentences.]

e.g. Всѣ **что ни** есть.*

Anything whatsoever.

Ско́лько **ни** раба́тали.

However much they worked.

* **ни** as compared with **не** is like the Latin *nē*, Greek *μή*, e.g. *πᾶν ὅ,τι ἂν ᾖ* or *μὴ ᾖ* whatever it may [not] be.

КѢмъ бы ты ни родился, ты всётаки обязанъ повиноваться закону.

Whatever you were born, you must obey the law.

Кто-нибудь.

Whoever it may be.

Кто-нибудь пусть принесётъ мнѣ стаканъ воды.

Let somebody bring me a glass of water.

(будь imperative of быть; v. § 57, II. and 41, VI.)

The distinction between *какой-то...* and *какой ни* is almost identical with the English "some" and "any": someone (but I don't know who exactly); anyone (and there is no discrimination nor knowledge of any individual).

IV. *The Reciprocal Pronouns.*

To express "each other," "one another," there are two phrases: *другъ друга, одинъ другой*. *другъ друга* is used for *all* genders and numbers. The latter part of the phrase is varied, to be in agreement with the verb or sentence.

e.g. Онѣ ненавидѣли другъ друга.

They hated each other.

Онѣ спорили другъ съ другомъ.

They quarrelled with each other.

другъ дружкѣ (from *дружка*, feminine) is popularly also in use.

But with regard to *things*, the usual phrase is *одинъ другой*, both of which are declined in full.

e.g. *Волны сходились и разбѣгались борясь одна съ другою.*

The waves met and parted, fighting one another.

V. *The Negative Pronouns* [v. § 85 and § 41, VII.].

In Russian, negatives are doubled, but do not cancel each other.* There is no means of expressing in Russian "I did *not* see nobody."

e.g. *Никакой не было причины къ его уходу.*
There was no reason.

All negative pronouns are resolved when governed by a preposition. [v. § 41, VII.]

e.g. *Ни къ какому изъ вышеуказанныхъ примѣровъ это не подходитъ.*

This does not comply with any of the previous examples.

The only apparent exception is when the second negative negates a different verb or a noun or adjective.

e.g. *Я не считаю его неучтивымъ.*
I do not consider him impolite.

Никто не можетъ не узнать его милосердія.

No one can not-recognise (fail to recognise) his clemency.

* E.g. in Greek *οὐδεὶς οὐκ ἄφικται* no one has come, but *οὐκ ἔπαθεν οὐδὲν* could mean, as in English, "he did not experience nothing, but..."

§ 83. THE RUSSIAN APPELLATIVES.

Under this head a few notes will be found, as to the Russian methods of speaking to others, writing to others, and addressing letters.

I. *Conversation.*

Intimate friends and relatives use the pronoun ты; the politer form is вы. The Russian for “tutoyer,” “dutzen,” is *тыкать*.

вы takes a predicative adjective in the plural.

e.g. вы *очень любезны* you are very kind (*unlike* the French “vous êtes très aimable”)

But a noun following is in the singular, as in French, e.g. вы мой *лучший другъ* you are my best friend.

Servants when speaking of their masters use the 3rd person plural.

e.g. *Дома-ли ба́ринь (или ба́рышня)?*

Is your master (mistress) at home?

Онѣ ушла́.

He (she) has gone out.

Russians in addressing one another use not the family name, but the Christian name and patronymic.

Russians have three names: the Christian name, the patronymic, i.e. the father's name, and the family name.

e.g. *Лѣвъ Никола́евичъ Толсто́й.*

The "patronymic" ends in -овичъ (-евичъ) or -овъ (-евъ) (for the lower classes) in the masculine,* and -овна (-евна) and -ова (-ева) in the feminine.

The Christian name is called *имя*, the patronymic *отчество*, the family name *фамілія*.

e.g. Какъ зовутъ васъ по имени, отчеству, фаміліи ?
 Какъ ваше имя, (ваше) отчество, (ваша)
 фамілія ?

In ordinary narration and conversation all classes are designated by the name and patronymic.

e.g. При Николаѣ Александровичѣ.

In the reign of Nicholas II.

Вчера я встрѣтилъ Мэрю Алексѣвну.

Equivalent to "yesterday I met Mary," or
 "yesterday I met Mrs. or Miss . . ."

The Russian equivalents for Mr., Mrs., Monsieur, Madame, are *господи́нъ* (plural *господá*), and *госпожа́*. The use of them is very much more restricted than in other European languages.

Господи́нъ, *госпожа́*, are only employed when the relationship is distant. Thus, the master of a factory would address his equal (whose name we will suppose to be *Васи́лій Па́вловичъ Перепо́лкинъ*) as *Васи́лій*

* The patronymic is accented like the name from which it is derived; where monosyllabic names throw the accent on to terminations, or the termination can be accented, the accent is similarly thrown forward in the derivative. E.g. *Оомá*, *Оомичъ*; *Кузьмá*, *Кузьмичъ*; *Сáвва*, *Сáввичъ*; *Пётръ* (*Петрá*), *Петрóвичъ*; *Алексáндръ* (*Алексáндра*), *Алексáндровичъ*. A few feminines are formed in -ична, e.g. *Ооминиш(ч)на*, *Сáввиш(ч)на*, *Кузьминиш(ч)на*; *Лукá*, *Лукѣиниш(ч)на*; *Никѣита*, *Никѣитиш(ч)на*.

Павловичъ; an underling (such as a clerk) as Господи́нъ Перепёлкинъ; a mere workman or lower servant as Васи́лий. He would not address him as Перепёлкинъ, unless he were a superior giving a direct command to an inferior; e.g. the master speaking to a foreman.

Again, if a doctor is introduced, he will commonly be addressed as до́кторъ (as we say "colonel" or "lieutenant" or "doctor"), unless he is of higher standing, when the polite form would be господа́инъ до́кторъ.

When comparative strangers address one another, they will say господа́инъ Ба́шкинъ; as they approach intimacy, they will use the form Илья́ Кузьми́чъ; and as close friends, Илья́; but seldom Ба́шкинъ, as in other languages, the surname.

II. *Between masters and servants.*

The servant speaks of his master and mistress, and their daughter, respectively as ба́ринъ, ба́рыня, ба́рышня.

In shops, restaurants, etc., an attendant calls the customers or masters су́дарь, судáрыня (an abbreviation of госуда́рь, госуда́рыня), or adds an enclitic съ; these phrases are equivalent to the English "sir" and "madam."

e.g. Слу́шаю-съ. I hear you, sir.

Да-съ. Yes, sir.

Что прика́жете-съ? What are your orders, sir?

This съ is supposed to be an abbreviation of су́дарь.

The master and mistress (*patron* and *patronne*) of a business house are хозя́инъ, хозя́ева.

III. At meetings the company is collectively addressed as Мѣлостивыя госудáрыни и мѣлостивые* госудáри, or more simply as господа́, equivalent to "Ladies and Gentlemen."

IV *Titles.*

Majesty is Вели́чество. The monarch is called госудáрь (госудáрыня), and these words are written with a capital, unless the reference is historical to a deceased monarch.

e.g. Его́ Имперáторское Вели́чество Госудáрь.

Ея́ Имперáтрица Вели́чество Госудáрыня.

Царь, цари́ца, are used in ordinary speech.

The Royal family has the title Высóчество.

e.g. Его́ Имперáторское Высóчество Наслѣ́дникъ.

Цесаревичъ Алексѣ́й Николáевичъ.

His Imperial Highness the heir Tsesarévich Alexis.

Otherwise the forms are царевичъ, цари́вна.

Grand Dukes (who belong to the Royal Family more distantly) are styled Вели́кий Князь.

e.g. Его́ Имперáторское Высóчество Вели́кий Князь Николáй Николáевичъ.

Ея́ Имперáторское Высóчество Вели́кая Кня́гиня Елизаве́та Николáевна.

The daughters of a князь are styled кня́жна́.

* A rendering of the German "gnädige Herrschaften."

Dukes (князь) have the title сійтельство (brilliance).

e.g. Его Сійтельство Князь Пáвель Петро́вичъ Долго-
ру́кій.

Earls and barons are also styled сійтельство.

e.g. Его Сійтельство Графъ (графі́ня) . . .

The civil ranks are as follows:—

Его́ Высокoпревосходітельство (excellency), for a
Дѣйстві́тельный Тайный Совѣ́тникъ (something
like a Privy Councillor; also called Стáтскій
Генерáль).

Его́ Превосходітельство, for a Тайный Совѣ́тникъ.

Его́ Высокoро́діе, for a Стáтскій Совѣ́тникъ.

Его́ Высокoблагоро́діе, for a Коллѣ́жскій Секретáрь,
and for the lower ranks.

Его́ Благо́родіе.

In the army, ranks from a порúчикъ (lieutenant) to
a штабъ-капитáнь (captain) are styled Его́ Благо́родіе;
from a капитáнь to полкóвникъ, Его́ Вы́соко-благоро́діе;
from a general of infantry to a general-lieutenant,
Его́ Превосходітельство.

In the Church, the regular clergy are styled Вы́соко-
препо́добіе, препо́добіе, высо́копреосвя́щенство, преосвя-
ще́нство, according to rank; the lower orders being
called благослове́ніе.

Persons not titled are addressed господи́нь, госпожа́,
followed by the full name; often the господи́нь,
госпожа́, is omitted on envelopes.

As stated in § 67, Russian concord follows sense and not form, unlike French and German.

e.g. Его Превосходительство изво́лили прибѣ́ть.

His Excellency has arrived (deigned to arrive)

Ея Императорское Величество Государыня говори́ла что . . .

Her Imperial Majesty the Empress said . . .

Contrast—"Sa Majesté le roi est arrivée." "Que désire-t-elle?" In Russian, что хо́тите.

These titles must be used in combination with the name of the office.

e.g. Его Высокопревосходительству Госпо́дну Ми́ни́стру На́ро́днаго Про́свѣ́щенія (Пу́тѣй соо́бщѣ́ній).

To his Excellency the Minister of Public Education (communications).

In a private letter—

Его Высокопревосходительству Арка́дію Миха́йловичу Ра́зину.

To his Excellency Arkádi Mikhailovič Rázin.

V. In addressing letters the full titles are inserted, in the dative, with or without къ.

e.g. In a private letter, Его Превосходительству (or Высокопревосходительству) Никола́ю Семёновичу Пу́гачёву.

If official, Его Высокопревосходительству Госпо́дну Нача́льнику Либа́во-Ро́менской желе́зной доро́ги, Никола́ю Семёновичу Пу́гачёву.

To his Excellency the director of the Libáva-Romeny railway. . . .

Where there is no title, any of these three forms are applicable :—

Его Высокорóдію Николáю Петрóвичу господа́нину Пивова́рову.

Николáю Петрóвичу Пивова́рову.

Or simply, Николáю Петрóвичу господа́нину Пивова́рову.

Next follows the name of the street and number, then the house, lastly the town and country.

e.g. Его Сі́нтельству Князю́ Семёну Арка́діевичу

Долгору́кому,

Мѣховáя у́лица, No. 18,

Домъ Ба́шкина,

въ Москвѣ́.

Letters addressed abroad are marked: за гра́нцу, beyond the frontier.

The letter is usually headed with some honorific adjective.

e.g. When very formal, Мі́лостивая Госуда́рыня,

Госпожа́ Ша́хматова; when less stiff, Мі́лостивая

Ма́рья Ефі́мовна; if friendly, Многоуважа́емая

Ма́рья Ефі́мовна; if intimate, Дорога́я or

.Любе́зная Ма́рья Ефі́мовна.

Thus the English equivalent of Многоуважа́емая Ма́рья Ефі́мовна, would in this case be “Dear Mrs. or Miss Šakhmatov.”

The conclusion of the letter would be as follows :—

Съ совер́шеннымъ почтѣ́ніемъ.

Гото́вый къ услу́гамъ.

(or, informally) Вашъ

Васі́лій Пивова́ровъ.

§ 84. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

As in English, sentences beginning with interrogative pronouns and adverbs are interrogative in themselves.

e.g. Когда прибѣдете?

When will you arrive?

Other interrogative sentences are distinguished by the enclitic particle **ли**, which is appended to the emphatic word of the sentence. The personal pronoun, or subject, may or may not follow the verb.

e.g. Не сможете-ли вы завтра пригото́вить мои сапоги́?
Will you not be able to get my boots ready to-morrow?

Скоро-ли прибѣдемъ къ берегу?
Shall we soon reach shore?

There is another interrogative adverb, **развѣ**, which conveys an ironic sense.

e.g. Развѣ ну́жно что́бы насъ подслу́шивали?
Is it necessary they should overhear us?

§ 85. NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

Russian has two particles of negation, **не** and **ни**. A third one, **нѣтъ**, is considered to be an abbreviation of **не есть**, and is used for "No" as a reply.

ни is used:—

(1) To express neither—nor—.

e.g. Ни я ни мой отецъ не могли скрыть такую тревогу.
Neither I nor my father could conceal such a trouble.

ни ни always requires the verb negatived with **не**.

(2) In composition with negative pronouns [v. § 40 (1), § 41, VII. and § 82, V.]. Such pronouns, e.g. **никако́й**, also need a verb negated with **не**.

(3) With the indefinite pronouns [v. § 82, III.].

не is used:—

(1) To express the negation of a verb in all tenses and moods.

e.g. **Не трогай меня́, когда́ я шью.**

Do not touch me, when I am sewing.

(2) With adjectives to negative their meaning. Notice in this connection that Russian possesses no such distinction of negatives as English or Latin; e.g. between non-essential, unessential, illogical, non-logical, insensate, nonsensical (the distinction generally being that an adjective negated with “un-” or “in-” implies the absence of the positive qualities; whereas the non-compound excludes the compatibility of that quality with some other object).

Such a distinction must be otherwise expressed.

e.g. Your statement is unreasonable.

Твоё объяснѣніе неразу́мно.

Caterpillars are irrational, non-rational beings.

Гусеницы—это безразу́мныя существа́.

Неопредѣ́лennыя зада́чи indefinite, undefined tasks.

Безпредѣ́льныя простран́ства infinite—endless—horizons.

Observe (as stated in § 41, VII.) that in Russian a double negative asseverates, and does not annul as in English.

e.g. **Я не встрѣ́чалъ никогó** I met no one.

An apparent exception exists, when the negatives belong to separate verbs or as stated above.

e.g. Это было встрѣчено, какъ нѣчто такое, что должно было случиться, что не могло не случиться.

This was faced as something that must have come about, that could not not have come about (have failed of coming about).

(3) не, in combination with certain pronouns, forms negative pronouns.*

The pronouns are кто, что, когда, куда, etc. (i.e. those on the first line § 40 (2)).

In this usage не stands for нѣтъ there is not.

e.g. Нечего дѣлать.

There is nothing to do.

(but Я не дѣлалъ ничегó.

I was doing nothing.)

Мнѣ не къ кому обратиться.

I have no one to turn to.

Емý не на чёмъ основывать егó надежды.

He has nothing on which to build up hopes.

The preposition is always inserted between the negative and the pronoun, as with никто, etc.

Observe, in the past or future tense the verb “to be” must be inserted.

e.g. Не чего будетъ (было) дѣлать.

Lastly, the reader is cautioned to distinguish between this use of не, as a separable negative, and нѣ the indefinite prefix ; e.g. нѣкто somebody, нѣкоторый, etc. [v. § 40 (2).]

* This use of не, formerly нѣ, is probably derived from не e there is not ; e in older Slavonic being an unaccented form of есть.

(3) In definitions.

e.g. Прямая линия есть кратчайшее расстояние между двумя точками.

A straight line is the shortest distance between two points.

Болезни суть наказание человеку за первородный грѣхъ.

Diseases are man's punishment for primeval sin.

But, in all such cases it is better to substitute the pronoun это.

e.g. Линия — это...

Болезни — это наказание...

(4) When the use of the copula is essential to clarity *быть* is generally replaced by some exacter verb, such as сидѣть, находиться, лежать, стоять, состоять.

e.g. Мой дѣдя находится въ плохомъ состояніи здоровья.
My uncle is in poor health.

Москва стоитъ на рѣкѣ того же названія.

Moscow lies (is) on a river of the same name.

Прага стоитъ на холмѣ надъ рѣкою Влтавою.*

Prague is on a hill above the Moldau.

Котъ сидитъ на стулѣ.

The cat is on the chair.

Собака лежитъ подъ столѣмъ.

The dog is under the table.

Стулъ стоитъ въ дѣтской.

The chair is in the nursery.

Онъ состоитъ офицеромъ въ арміи.

He is an officer on service.

The omission in Russian of the present of *быть* explains the form of the past tense. In older Russian the perfect ran я есмь (на)писалъ, -а, -о, ты еси (на)писалъ, -а, -о, etc.; later the copula vanished. Cf. in Polish *писаłem, pisałem, pisałom*; *писаłeś, pisałeś, pisałś*, etc.; *писаłіsmy, pisałіsmy*, etc.

* Or Молдавою.

In every other tense and mood the verb **быть** is used, but the predicate put into the dative or instrumental, according to sense.

e.g. **Онъ былъ банкиромъ** (present **онъ банкиръ**)
а тепѣрь онъ торговецъ селѣдками.

He was a banker and is now selling herrings.

Нашѣствие Татаръ было несчастьемъ для Рѹси.

The incursion of the Tatars was a misfortune to Russia.

Когда бываєте (бѹдете) дома?

When are you at home as a rule?

When will you be at home?

It should, however, be observed that in the present the word **вотъ** is used like the French *voici*, *voilà*, or the Italian *ecco*.

e.g. **Вотъ вашъ братъ который опоздалъ.**

There is your brother who was late.

§ 87. THE VERB "TO HAVE."

In Russian there is no verb which can be exactly translated "to have."

The verb "to have" is replaced by **у меня есть, былъ, etc.**

e.g. **У меня [есть] (было or были) три грамматикѹ рѹскаго языка.**

I have (had) three grammars of the Russian language.

имѣть “to possess” or “own” is also used in this sense.

e.g. Съ кѣмъ имѣю честь говорить?

With whom have I the honour of speaking?

Otherwise, имѣть means “to own”; cf. имѣщество property.

e.g. У меня есть собственный домъ.

I have a house of my own.

But Имѣю собственный домъ.

I have (i.e. own as my property) a house belonging to me.

§ 88. SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has a special idiomatic use as a sort of general fatalistic future; the construction is impersonal, the logical subject and the predicate both being put in the dative.

e.g. Имъ не забыть своихъ дѣтей.

They shall not forget their children.

Такимъ образомъ никому не быть богатымъ.

In this fashion no one gets rich. [v. § 34 (1).]

Ну, хорошо что ты ко мнѣ зашёлъ; а то не быва́ть тебѣ живому.

It is well for you you came to me; otherwise you would not be alive.

Observe the dative adjective may be in the simple or attributive form; the instrumental is also allowable; thus in the instance above, *такимъ образомъ . . . богатымъ*.

The infinitive *may* be used as a noun, as in English.

e.g. To fly on an aeroplane is a great pleasure.

Летѣть на аэропланѣ—это большое удовольствіе.*

* Observe aviator is лѣтчикъ.

But the verbal noun in *-nie* is generally substituted in the nominative, and always in the oblique cases.

e.g. To suffer is our truest experience.

Страданіе — наше самое истинное испытаніе.

By trying you will succeed.

Стараніемъ тебѣ удастся.

§ 89. THE USE OF GERUNDIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

I. *The Gerundives.*

The two gerundives, present and past, can only refer to the subject* of the sentence, and are used as indeclinable participles.

e.g. Бродя по улицѣ, я встрѣтилъ Ивана Яковлева.

Whilst wandering along the street I met
Iván Yákovlevic.

Читая Анну Каренину, я плакала.

On reading Anne Karénina, I cried.

Заплативъ свой долгъ, я почувствовала себя
свободною.

Having paid my debts I felt free.

II. *The participles, present and past.*

These are used in agreement with a noun.

e.g. Въ комнатѣ было тихо, только шелестѣли
переворачиваемыя листы.

It was quiet in the room, only the leaves (of
the book) rustled as they were turned over
(present participle passive).

* The historical explanation of this rule is that the "gerundives" are the shorter (predicative) form of the nom. sing. masculine of the active participles.

Пéредъ егó расшíренными гла́зами проходíли
стра́шные о́бразы, вызы́вавшие жа́лость . . .

Before his *open* eyes terrifying images passed,
provoking pity . . .

Въ тёмную почь онí летѣли кудá-то на сво́ихъ
колю́чихъ крѣ́льяхъ.

In the dark of night they flew somewhere on
their *sharp-pointed* wings.

Всё э́го было проявлéния однóй зага́дочной
сíлы, жела́ющей погуби́ть чело́вѣка.

All of these were aspects of some one
mysterious power *that wants* to ruin man-
kind.

Я ви́дѣлъ её сидя́щей на сту́лѣ.

I saw her *sitting* in a chair.

Онъ походíлъ на чело́вѣка теря́ющего послѣ́д-
нюю надѣ́жду и оста́вившаго всё въ про́ш-
ломъ.

He resembled a man *who was losing* his last
hope, and *had left* everything behind in the
past.

Ка́ждый годъ ру́сская желѣзодо́блительная
промы́шленность уменьша́етъ ко́личество
ввози́мыхъ изъ Герма́нии това́ровъ.

Every year the Russian iron industry
diminishes the quantity of goods imported
from Germany.

It should also be observed that the present participle passive, especially when compounded with *he*, has a secondary meaning, corresponding to the Latin *-bilis*.

e.g. *видимый* visible, *движимый* moveable
сгораемый incendiary, *нелюбимый* unlovable

Abstracts from these are formed in *-ость*, etc.

неотъемлемость imprescriptibility
неотмѣняемость irrevocability

The past participle passive *may* also bear this same secondary meaning, e.g. *несравненный* incomparable.

As a general rule these gerundives and participles are used much like the English forms in “-ing.”

§ 90. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

I. *Temporal.*

There being no moods in the Russian verb, temporal conjunctions merely govern the same forms as are used in principal clauses.

There are some few independent forms, such as *когда* when, *пока* until; most of the conjunctions are compounds with *что*; cf. in French *quand*, but *quoique*, *bienque*, *lorsque*, etc., all formed with *que*.

когда means “when” generally; *пока* is followed by “*не*,” as in French.

e.g. *Пока Нѳиковъ не уѳжаль изъ Москвы.*

Until *Nóvikov* left Moscow, “*jusqu’à ce que Novikov ne quittât Moscou.*”

But temporal conjunctions are mostly formed with the appropriate preposition governing a case of *тотъ*, *то*,

followed by *какъ* or *что*; e.g. *между тѣмъ какъ* while, *въ то́мъ что* exactly when, *по то́мъ что*, *послѣ того какъ* after, *до того какъ* until, *отъ того что* after which . . .

II. *Causal conjunctions, etc.*

These are all formed prepositionally; e.g. *потому́ что* because, *для того что́бы* with the object of, *кро́мъ того что* besides which, *послѣ того какъ* after (causal), *прот́ивъ того́, что* against the fact that . . ., etc., very much like the German “wogegen,” “indem,” “nachdem,” etc.

III. *Conditional clauses.*

The clause prefaced by “if” is called the protasis, the principal sentence is called the apodosis.

The regular method is to prefix the protasis with *если*, in common parlance *ко́ли*.

When the past tense are used the particle *бы** may be added to the protasis, and must be added to the apodosis. *бы* is enclitic and can be abbreviated to *бъ*, e.g. *еслибъ*.

The apodosis is also frequently prefaced by the particle *то*, which stands first in the sentence, like the German “wenn . . .” “so.” This *то*, like *so*, is left untranslated in English.

* *Бы* in modern Russian is a particle creating the sense of a conditional tense (“I would have,” “should be,” etc.). It is originally the 2nd and 3rd person sing. preterite of *быть* (formerly *я быхъ, ты, онъ бы*). In Old Russian the compound tense *быхъ быхъ* was a regular conditional like *j'aurais été, j'eusse été*.

The tense sequence is as in English.

e.g. Если васъ посѣщѹ, то приведу мою сестру.

If I visit you, I will bring my sister.

Если-бъ случилась такая бѣда, то я увѣдомилъ-бы васъ объ этомъ.

If such a misfortune happened to me, I would acquaint you of it.

When the events stated in protasis and apodosis are both unreal, бы is repeated in both.

e.g. Если-бъ я простудился, я не могъ бы окончить свою кнѣгу.

If I had caught cold, I should not have been able to finish my book.

The infinitive may be used in either clause as stated in § 88.

e.g. Если бы мнѣ звать.

If I had known.

Если идти направо.

If we are to go to the right, ...

The protasis may be *irregularly* introduced: —

(1) By two disjointed verbs.

e.g. Разбогатѣю, заплачѹ; не разбогатѣю, не заплачѹ.

If I grow rich, I will pay; if I don't, I shan't.

(2) By the imperative uninflected for any person [v. § 91].

e.g. Знай я это раньше, я бы не написалъ.

Had I known this sooner, I would not have written.

(3) By the infinitive [cf. § 88].

e.g. Знать бы мнѣ это раньше, я бы не осмѣлился говорить.

Had I known this sooner, I would not have dared speak.

In all these cases бы marks unreality, an unfulfilled condition. Cf. § 93 on было.

IV. Final clauses.

Final clauses relate either to purpose or effect.

(1) Purpose.

Where the subjects of the principal and the subordinate clause are the same, чтобы (sometimes дабы) is used with the infinitive.

e.g. Я путешествовалъ по Россіи чтобы учиться русскому языку.

I travelled about in Russia to learn Russian.
[v. § 69, V.]

Where the subjects are different, чтобы (or дабы) generally with the past tense.

e.g. Я уѣду изъ Москвы чтобы ты осталась одна.

I will leave Moscow that you may be left alone.

(2) Effect—"so that," такъ что, with the present, past or future.

e.g. Орёлъ летѣлъ такъ быстро что нельзя было попастьъ въ него.

The eagle flew so fast that there was no chance of hitting him.

Она такъ раздражительна, что я не выдержу.
She is so irritable that I shall not stand it.

V. *Reported Speech.*

In English reported speech goes into the tense of the principal verb, with the necessary change of person.

e.g. "He said that he was going to visit his cousin if time permitted." The remark in direct narration would be "I am going to visit my cousin, if time permits."

The same rule does not altogether apply to Russian. Russian has only one past tense, so that there is no difference corresponding to "I *have* seen," "I said I *had* seen." Further, there is no reported future tense, "was going to visit," "would visit." Consequently the above sentence in Russian would run: "Онъ сказаль что посѣтитъ своего двоюроднаго брата если у него будетъ время" (present tense in reported speech).

Or again, "He said he had seen the Tsar." His remark was "I have seen the Tsar"; however, in Russian, "I saw," "have seen," and "had seen" are all alike, увидѣлъ. Consequently the Russian would be: "Онъ сказаль что видѣлъ Царя."

Lastly, in reporting the present tense, Russian, like English, sometimes may change to the past.

e.g. He said he was writing a letter to his mother
(I am writing . . .).

Онъ сказаль что писалъ письмо къ матери, *or*
better что пишетъ.

Consequently, in reporting an action with a verb in the past, Russian does not, because it cannot, change the tense.

In reporting a speech with a future tense Russian must use the future, as it has no indirect form of expressing the future.

In reporting a speech with a verb in the present, Russian can retain the present, changing the person, *or* may use the past tense.

In reporting an imperative, the imperative must be treated like a future.

e.g. They said they would murder Cæsar (i.e. Let us murder Cæsar).

Онѣ сказали что убьютъ Цезаря (сказали, да убьѣтъ *or* убьѣмте Цезаря).

In reporting a question, the same changes of person and tense must be used, but the particle *ли* is affixed to the first word of the subordinate clause, unless some other interrogative word be there instead. [v. § 84.]

e.g. He asked Peter would his (Peter's) sister be going out as a nurse.

He asked Peter when his sister had lost her money.

He asked Peter whether his sister was ailing.

In direct speech—

Will your sister be going out as a nurse?

When did your sister lose her money?

Is your sister ailing?

In Russian—

Онъ спросилъ Петра, пойдѣтъ-ли его сестра въ няньки. [v. § 69, III.]

Онъ спросилъ Петра, когда его сестра потеряла ея деньги.

Онъ спросилъ Петра, не больна-ли его сестра.

In all these cases the only change is in the person, none in the tense.

Similarly—

He said "could one believe a German."

Онъ сказа́лъ, "ра́звѣ мо́жно вѣ́рить Нѣмцу."

These are the usual methods of reporting speech in Russian. A few idiomatic usages must still be discussed. Three particles, *де*, *мо́лъ* and *де́ска́тъ* (or *ду́ска́тъ*), and in vulgar Russian, *грю*, *гря́шь*, *гря́тъ*, *гря́ли* (abbreviations of *говори́ю*), are used like the vulgar English, "'e sez," to indicate a reported speech; *де*, *мо́лъ*, *ду́ска́тъ* are all three abbreviations of words bearing the same meaning, "he said"; * and are all popular in style.

These particles are used in reporting messages (where in Latin and Greek the accusative and infinitive would be employed).

e.g. Онъ говори́тъ: я мо́лъ иска́лъ, да зна́ть мо́лъ нѣ́тъ.

He says, "I looked, but could not find out."

Объ ита́льинской а́рміи отзы́вался съ презри́тельной улы́бкой, какъ о вели́чинѣ́ да́же серьё́знаго вни́ма́нія не заслу́живающей; мы́-де её хоро́шо зна́емъ. [v. § 4 (7).]

He disparaged the Italian army with a contemptuous smile, as though speaking of a power not deserving serious attention; "we know all about it."

Вы ду́мали запуга́ть меня́, Васи́лій Ива́новичъ; во́тъ деска́тъ, я его́ пугну́.

You thought you would frighten me, Vasili Ivánovič; you thought, "I will frighten him."

* These examples are partly taken from Boyer's *Manuel de la langue russe*.

In every case where these particles are used, the quotation or indirect narration is in the person and tense of the original; these words merely serve as spoken inverted commas.

§ 91. THE IMPERATIVE.

The imperative conjugated in full comprises the following forms:—

e.g. да играю	пусть играю	let me play
играй		play
да играеть	пусть играеть	let him play
да играемъ	пусть играемъ, играемте	let us play
играйте		play
да играютъ	пусть играютъ	let them play

The forms with да express desire; those with пусть permission.

The original imperative has only two forms, играй, играйте, and in Old Russian играй was the correct form of both the 2nd and the 3rd person singular.

The form in и, ъ, ѣ, ѥ (e.g. сохнѣ, держѣ, дѣлай, сядѣ) is used for all numbers and persons in phrases which have no imperative meaning.

(1) Adverbially.

e.g. пожа́луйста	please (ста suffix)
пожа́луй*	I consent, so be it
ча́й*	(ча́ять expect) so be it
пу́сть or пу́скай	so be it
кажѣсь	apparently
глядѣ	apparently
небо́сь (for небо́йсѣ)	do not fear) apparently
по́дѣ (for по́йдѣ from по́йдѣти)	apparently
почтѣ	almost

* Probably these are abbreviated forms of пожа́люю, ча́ю.

дай with the perfect future "if I only could."

e.g. Вотъ дай унесу́ мѣшо́къ огури́цовъ, прода́мъ.

If I can carry off this sack of cucumbers, I will sell it.

дава́й with the infinitive.

e.g. Дава́й игра́ть. Let us play.

The answer may be дава́й! Let us! = Yes, please; willingly,

(2) As a preterite.* The form is invariable, and expresses a sudden action.

e.g. Отку́да ни возьми́сь from out of the clouds.
(Literally, from wherever it came.)

Съ го́ря да съ тоски́... я возьми́ да всё ей расскажи́.

What with pity and grief I told her everything.

Чего́-жъ бы я въ до́мѣ не зналъ? Кажись, всё зна́ю.

What do I not know of at home? I think I know everything.

Поста́вила на столъ напѣтки и заку́ски разны́е, и поутру́ ранехонько бу́дить и дава́й распра́шивать.

She set various foods and drinks on the table; wakes up in the morning, and began asking [literally "and let me ask!"].

So, too, глядъ he looked up, — lo! хватъ he seized; дѣрни, e.g. дѣрни менѣ́ the idea occurred to me; угоро́зди, e.g. угоро́зди менѣ́ the idea occurred to me.

* This usage is in accord with the older grammar, which had a 3rd person singular preterite in this form.

(3) As a conditional, v. § 90, III. (2).

(4) One past tense, пошёл, is used as an imperative, equivalent to "get out." The explanation is that the older language had the full form будь пошёл (будь imperative of быть).

e.g. Пошли вонъ, дурачки!
Out you go, you fools!

§ 92. FURTHER ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE ASPECTS.

Russian has two future forms, perfective and imperfective.

e.g. Въ будущемъ году буду заниматься химіей.

Next year I shall study chemistry.

Завтра займусь музыкой.

To-morrow I shall be busy with my music.

Remember буду and стану can never be used with a perfective infinitive.

The perfective implies definition of object, and completion of purpose; the imperfective the duration or method of the process.

Instances:—

Лѣтомъ онъ ходилъ въ пальто (imperfective).

In the summer he walked about in an overcoat.

(French "paletot"; indeclinable in Russian.)

Онъ нерѣдко хаживалъ въ отцовскій домъ.

He often went to his father's house.

(The iterative, expressing discontinuous frequent action.)

Тотъ, который прохаживается около этого дома
отъ десяти часовъ до полудня называется
Никитинымъ.

The man who saunters round this house from
10 to 12 a.m. is called Nikítin.

Онъ шёлъ въ Москвѣ he was going to Moscow.

Онъ пошёлъ на вокзалъ.

He went to the railway station (perfective
and definitive).

Я видѣлъ виды на своёмъ вѣкѣ!

I have seen wonderful things in my life!
(imperfective; general).

Я увидѣлъ Анну на башнѣ.

I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (per-
fective).

Я увидѣлъ въ гостинницѣ одного знакомаго.

I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.

(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Тамъ-же видѣлъ много иностранцевъ.

I also saw many foreigners there.

(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the "aspects" are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the "aspects."

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as *шептáть* or *выдира́ть*. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an "abstract" and "concrete" aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III.

SCHEME OF A RUSSIAN VERB WITH FULL ASPECTS
ARRANGED AS TENSES AND MOODS.

Present.

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выди́рать	шепта́ть
Verbal noun :	выди́ра́ние	шепта́ние
Part. indecl. act. :	выди́рая	шепча́
Part. decl. active :	выди́рающ́ий	шепча́щий
Part. passive :	выди́рае́мый	шепча́емый
Indicative :	выди́раю, -ешь, -ю́ть	шепчу́, шепчу́ть
Imperative :	выди́рай	шепчи́

• *Imperfect.*

Indicative :	выди́ралъ	шепта́лъ
Part. indecl. act. :	выди́равъ, -а́вши	шепта́въ, -а́вши
Part. decl. active :	выди́равши́й	шепта́вши́й

Imperfect iterative.

Indicative :	Same as	ше́птывалъ
Part. indecl. act. :	Imperfect	ше́птывавъ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	throughout.	ше́птывавши́й

Perfect active.

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	вы́драть	
Verbal noun :	вы́драніе*	Same as
Part. indeclin. :	вы́дравъ, -авши	Aorist
Part. declinable :	вы́дравши	throughout.
Indicative :	вы́дралъ	
Imperative :	вы́дри	

Perfect.

Part. passive :	{ вы́дранный } { вы́дира́нный }	шёпта́нный
-----------------	------------------------------------	------------

Aorist.

Infinitive :	вы́дернуть	шепну́ть
Verbal noun :	вы́дерну́тіе*	шепну́тіе*
Part. indecl. :	вы́дернувъ, -увши	шепну́въ, -у́вши
Part. declinable :	вы́дернувший	шепну́вший
Part. passive :	вы́дернутый	шепну́тый
Imperative :	вы́дери	шепни •

Future.

Continuous :	бу́ду вы́дирать	бу́ду шепта́ть
Iterative :	„ „	бу́ду шёпты́вать*
Perfective :	вы́дру, -ёшь, -у́тъ	Same as Aoristic.
Aoristic :	вы́дерну, -ешь, -у́тъ	шепну́, -ёшь, -у́тъ

Conditionals can be formed from any *past* tense by adding the particle бы.

* Seldom used,

§ 93. AUXILIARY PARTICLES.

The Russian verb has only one past tense, and one present. It has been explained how the aspects supplement the tense system, the imperfective supplying an imperfect tense [v. § 42 (2) (i) and (ii), § 59, § 90, III., and § 92]; the perfective a past tense of completion, whether preterite perfect or pluperfect, and a determinate future; the iterative a tense to express frequency of action; and the abstract aspect the power as contrasted with the act. Further, the particle *бы* partially replaces the subjunctive mood.

There are other particles and auxiliaries used, e.g. *пусть, да, дай, давай* [v. § 91], principally with the imperative; and the use of some others, e.g. *давно́, было, быва́ло, ста́ну, бу́ду, будто, только, что*, is important.

(1) *давно́* (*да́вный* in the past) or *уже́* (already) is used to express the pluperfect.

e.g. *Онъ давно́ иска́лъ до́чку.*

He had long been searching for his daughter
(imperfective).

Ты уже́ пригото́вилъ о́бѣдъ.

You had prepared dinner (perfective).

(2) *бу́ду*, as has been seen [§ 92], expresses the imperfective future [also v. § 58].

(3) *ста́ну* also expresses the imperfective future, but has a remoter meaning, like the English "I am going to . . ." or the French "*je vais . . .*"

e.g. *Ста́ну собира́ть мои́ ве́щи въ чемода́нъ.*

I am going to pack my things in the
portmanteau.

(4) *бўдто* or *какъ бўдто* means “as though.”

e.g. *Онъ всталъ какъ бўдто что́бы уходи́ть.*

He got up as though he were going out.

Онъ улыбу́лся какъ бўдто его́ братъ пошутíлъ.

He smiled as though his brother had made a joke

(5) *то́лько что* means “just.”

e.g. *Онъ то́лько что похорои́лъ своего́ отца́ какъ померла́ и мать.*

He had just buried his father, when his mother died.

(6) *быва́ю* with the past tense adds a meaning of “he used to do,” of a continuous practice.

e.g. *Я быва́ю посѣща́лъ эту́ семью́.*

I used to visit this family.

(7) *хот́и* (or *хоть*) is used for “though”; in combination with *бы* and a past tense, *бъ* when the sense imports unreality.

e.g. *Хот́и ты былъ хўденькíй, па́до было́ постарáться.*

Though you were ill, you should have tried.

Хот́и я бўду въ Москвѣ́, но мнѣ́ нельзя́ бўдетъ повида́ть ва́шихъ роди́телей.

Though I shall be at Moscow, I shall not be able to see your parents.

Хот́и-бъ я былъ са́мымъ си́льнѣйшимъ на свѣ́тѣ́, о́бданныхъ я-бъ не угнетáлъ.

Even if I were the most powerful man on earth, I would not oppress the poor.

(8) *было* with the imperfective or perfective past signifies that the action contemplated, in the clause into which *было* is inserted, was never completed: as something—in the following sentence—intervened.

e.g. Я дѣлалъ было пригото́вленія что́бы пригласи́ть васъ къ себѣ въ го́сти, ко́гда меня́ вы́звали изъ Лондо́на.

I was getting ready to ask you to a party, but was summoned away from London.

Я дочита́лъ ва́ше сочи́неніе и уложи́лъ было́ для по́чты, ко́гда непри́тели сожгли́ мой до́мъ.

I had finished reading your composition, and had packed it up to post, but the enemy burned my house.

(9) The future perfect (I shall have . . .) cannot be expressed in Russian by any one corresponding tense.

e.g. Ко́гда я бу́ду впло́нѣ удовле́творѣ́нъ, меня́ уже́ не бу́детъ у живы́хъ.

When I shall have been satisfied completely, I shall no longer be alive.

Я побѣ́гý домо́й и бу́ду наза́дъ, пре́жде чѣ́мъ ты встáнешь.

I shall have run home and back, before you even get up.

§ 94. THE IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.

I. Many verbs are in themselves impersonal; e.g. *ка́жется* it seems, *ока́зывается* it transpires.*

* *Каза́ться* to seem, *оказа́ть* to render, *сказа́ть* tell, *приказа́ть* order, *разсказа́ть* narrate, *указа́ть* indicate, *показа́ть* show, *отказа́ть* dismiss, refuse; all of them perfective, the imperfectives being *оказы́вать*, etc

Such verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular, as in Latin or Greek without *any* pronoun.

II. There is no one word for generality like “one,” “man,” “*on*”; either the 2nd person singular, or the 3rd person plural is used.

e.g. Говорѣтъ one says.

Чѣмъ болѣ стараешься, тѣмъ болѣ ошибаешься.
The more one tries, the more mistakes one makes.

III. Russian has a predilection for impersonal construction in the passive with *ся* [v. § 60], the agent or subject being put into the dative.

e.g. хочу I wish, or мнѣ хочется; видѣть I saw, мнѣ видѣлось; спать to sleep, мнѣ спалось
хорошо I slept soundly; думаю I think, мнѣ думается I think; жить to live, въ Англіи свободно проживается life is free in England.

As a rule the reflexive passive construction imports a remoteness or generality to the sentence, whereas the active records a precise and determinate fact.

§ 95. APOCOPATED FORMS OF SOME VERBS.

A few verbs signifying a brusque action or noise have an *invariable* form for the past tense.*

E.g. the interjections ахъ! охъ! ухъ! эхъ! are sometimes used like parts of a verb, meaning “to cry out” ахъ, эхъ, etc.

* In many cases very similar to the apocopated past of imperfectives in -нулъ [v. § 50, II.], and the imperative preterites [v. § 91].

So, too, the past of inchoatives in -нѣть; e.g. прыгъ jumped, стукъ knocked, and similarly бѣхъ bump.

e.g. Бѣхъ — поплыли въ водахъ глубокихъ.
Plump — they swam in the deep waters.

Онѣ подошли къ дому и стукъ въ окно.
They approached the house and rat-ta-tap-tap
on the window.

Лиса пустилась къ лѣсу и юркъ въ нору.
The fox started for the wood, and dashed into
a hole.

· § 96. THE REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Under this head a few special phrases may be discussed. It has already been stated [§ 60] what the distinction is between passives and reflexives.

e.g. Этой войнѣ разрушились всѣ ходичія литера-
турныя представленія.

In this war all the current literary notions
were destroyed.

Уничтожали самѣхъ себя оба противника (or
уничтожили, perfective).

Both combatants annihilated themselves.

Where an action is done for someone at his orders French uses the exact phrase “faire . . .”; English leaves it to be understood; the Russian usage will be illustrated by the example.

e.g. The workmen built a house.
L'ouvrier bâtit une maison.
Рабочіи построили домъ.

But I have built a country-house.
Je me suis fait bâtir une maison de campagne.
Я построилъ себя усадьбу.

Женá обóулась.

The woman has put her shoes on.

Elle s'est chaussée, *or* elle s'est fait chausser.

Я побрѣюсь.

I will shave [myself] or be shaved.

Я брѣюсь самъ.

I shave *myself*.

Many verbs are reflexive in Russian, where they would not be so in English.

In the first place the reflexive indicates that the object is identical with the subject.

e.g. мýться to wash (oneself), обóуваться to put on shoes, etc., одѣваться to dress (oneself), etc.

In the second place [v. § 60] it indicates the passive (as in French).

e.g. Свирѣности продолжáются.

Les barbaries se continuent (are being continued).

Я лиши́лся ма́тери.

I have lost my ~~father~~ *mother*.

Онъ лиши́лся жи́зни.

He has died.

Онъ лиши́лъ себя жи́зни.

He has committed suicide.

In the third place many verbs are naturally reflexive or deponent.

e.g. горди́ться чѣмъ to boast

бои́ться чего to fear

Fourthly, many verbs with the reflexive import what was in Greek the middle voice, i.e. an action directed to the purpose of or affecting the subject of the verb, though the object governed be not the subject of the sentence.

e.g. Онъ стучить въ дверь.

He is knocking at the door.

Онъ стучится въ дверь.

He is knocking at the door (with some expectation concerning himself).

Волосы старца (or у старца) бѣлѣютъ.

An old man's hair goes white.

Снѣжныя вершины горъ бѣлѣются въ отдалѣнии.
The snow-peaks of the mountain are whitening
in the distance.

Слѣшать to hear.

Слѣшаться obey.

Мѣхи кусаютъ.

Flies sting [bite].

Моя кошка кусается.

My cat bites (as her habit).

Признавать to acknowledge.

Признаваться to admit, confess.

Я призналъ его правымъ.

I acknowledged him to be right.

Я признался, что я не былъ совсѣмъ безвѣннымъ.

I confessed I was not altogether guiltless.

§ 97. RUSSIAN RELATIONSHIPS.

In the matter of words descriptive of relationships, Russian has an extraordinary abundance of special words.

Kinship is родствó.

Degrees of relationship стéпени родствá :—

General terms о́бщія назва́нiя.

прéдокъ прéдки	ancestors
потóмки	descendants
рóдственникъ	kinsman
рóдственница	kinswoman
родъ (рóда)	family (genealogically)
семья́ (фамíлiя)	a family

Special designations о́собыя назва́нiя :—

Lineal descent поколѣ́нiе нисходя́щее.

сынъ	son	} поколѣ́нiя по прямой ли́нiи generations in the direct line
дочь	daughter	
дѣти	children	
внукъ	grandson	
вну́чка	granddaughter	
вну́чата	grandchildren [v. § 26 (5)]	
пра́внукъ, etc.	great grandson	

Lineal ascent поколѣ́нiе восходя́щее.

оте́ць *	father
мать	mother
родíтели	parents
дѣ́дъ	grandfather
ба́бушка (ба́бка)	grandmother
пра́дѣдъ	great grandfather
пра́бабушка	great grandmother
прапра́дѣдъ, etc.	great great grandfather
пра́щуръ	great great great grandfather

* Бáтюшка in familiar speech.

Collateral relations побѣчное родствѣ.

братъ *	brother
сестра́	sister
дѣдя	uncle
тѣтя, тѣтка	aunt
† стрѣй	uncle, paternal
† стрѣя	aunt, paternal
† уй	uncle, maternal
† уйка	aunt, maternal
† уецъ, уйчичъ, -ечка	first cousin on father's side
† стрѣйчичъ, -ечка	first cousin, maternal side
племянникъ, -ица	nephew, niece
братаничъ, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by brother
сестричъ, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by sister
двоюродный братъ (сестра́)	first cousin §
троюродный братъ	second cousin, and so on
двоюродный племян- никъ	first cousin once removed in second generation downwards

Similarly—

троюродная ба́бушка	great aunt
троюродный дѣдъ	great uncle

These words for relationship are, however, seldom used beyond the third generation; in ordinary language a third cousin would be ро́дственникъ въ четвёртомъ ко́лѣнѣ, a kinsman in the fourth generation.

* Used colloquially to express friendly connection.

† All of these are obsolete or nearly so.

‡ Disused now.

§ I.e. a brother in the second generation.

Relations by marriage родство́ по бра́ку (сво́йство*).

	<i>From the husband's side.</i>	<i>From the wife's side.</i>
Father-in-law	тесть	свёкорь
Mother-in-law	тёща	свекро́вь
Brother-in-law	ну́рипъ or зять	дёверь
	[v. § 24 (2)]	
Sister-in-law	сво́йченица, or свесьть, or невёстка	золо́вка
Son-in-law	зять	зять
Daughter-in-law	сноха́ or невёстка	сно́ха or невёстка
Sister-in-law's husband	сво́йкъ	золо́вкинъ мужъ
Wife of brother-in-law	ятровъ†	ятровъ†

I.e. my sister's husband is зять; my brother's wife невёстка; but my wife's sister is свесьть or со́йченица, and her husband со́йкъ; my husband's sister золо́вка. In English "brother-in-law," "sister-in-law," leave all these relationships indeterminate.

Other terms to be noted are:—

отчимъ	step-father
мáчеха	step-mother
пáсынокъ	step-son
пáдчерица	step-daughter
сво́дпый братъ	step-brother
сво́дная сестра́	step-sister

* But со́йство property.

† Obsolete.

крѣстный отецъ	godfather
крѣстная мать	godmother
крѣстникъ (крѣстный сынъ)	godson
крѣстница (крѣстная дочь)	goddaughter
невѣста	bride
женѣхъ	bridegroom
женáтый	married (of a man)
замужняя	married (of a woman)
бракъ	marriage
свадьба	wedding

Note.—мужъ женѣтся на жену, *but* женá выйдѣтъ замужъ на когó.

Онъ выдалъ Áнну замужъ на Плью.
He gave Anne in marriage to Ilyá.

Моя сестра́ замужемъ.
My sister is married.

Замужство, замужество marriage (of a woman).
Женѣтьба marriage (of a man).

Relations of the half-blood are said to be *единокрóвный* ; e.g. мой братъ *единокрóвный* my half-brother, and are further distinguished as *братъ по мáтери*, *сестра́ по отцу́*, etc.

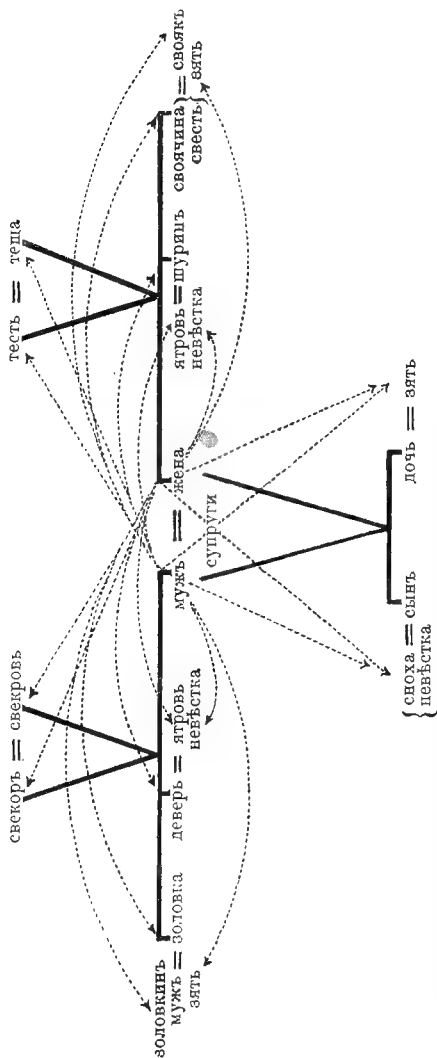
TABLE OF KINSHIP (Таблица Родственниковъ).

		Колѣна. Generations.		Предки—Ancestors.		Потомки—Descendants.	
пращуръ ...	...	...	...	пращуръ ...	...	пращуръ ...	5—
патриродный прапрадѣль ...	...	...	...	прапрадѣль ...	...	прапрадѣль ...	4—
5 род. прадѣль ...	...	...	...	прадѣль ...	...	прадѣль ...	3—
4 род. дѣдъ ...	...	...	...	дѣдъ ...	...	бабушка ...	2—
3 род. дядя ...	...	...	...	дядя ...	...	тѣтка ...	1—
4 род. братъ ...	...	...	...	братъ ...	...	сестра ... (шла замужъ за шур.)	...
3 род. племя ...	...	...	...	племя ...	...	племянница ...	...
2 род. внукъ ...	...	...	...	внукъ ...	...	внучка ...	...
3 род. правн ...	...	...	...	правн ...	...	правнукъ ...	...
4 род. праправн ...	...	...	...	праправн ...	...	праправнукъ ...	...

Е.g. My fourth cousin (fem.) once removed (in older generation) мой патриродная тѣтка.
My third cousin twice removed (in younger generation) мой четырёхродный внукъ.

TABLE OF AFFINITIES (Таблица Свойственныхъ).

Родители по браку или по свойству.



22

Е.б. Женатые на двухъ сестёръ называются между собою свояки. Идены двухъ братьевъ между собою ятропы. Золовка это мужнина сестра. Шурьями называются жены братьевъ.

Зять имѣеть двойное значеніе; онъ или сестринъ, или дочеринъ мужъ; такимъ-же образомъ невестка есть, или братнина жена или сыновья.

ETYMOLOGY.

Under this head a list of formatives of nouns, verbs, and adjectives is inserted in alphabetical order. Except for those few whose accentuation is fixed, i.e. either absolutely atonic, or else always stressed, and subject to special rules stated in the body of the grammar, the rule is that *these terminations are accented, whenever the primary form is capable of throwing its accent forward in any inflection* (e.g. столъ, столá and столáрь; but óбщій, óбще, óбщество; товарищъ, товарищество); they are *unaccented, if the primary form has a fixed accent on its stem*. Thus, too, царь, царя́, царя́ца; but нача́льникъ, нача́льника, нача́льница; рабо́та, рабо́тникъ, рабо́тать, etc.

Some of the terminations are now “dead,” i.e. disused, except in survivals. When this is so, a special remark is made to this effect.

The letter ь will be found prefixed to many. This indicates that in composition the previous sounds, vowels or consonants, must be modified. [v. § 5.]

§ 98. THE NOUNS.

I. Foreign terminations in common use. These are few in number and easily learnt.

-ция, in foreign words, = “-tion”; e.g. áкция share, на́ция nation, позу́ция position. Always accented as shown.

-е́рь, i.e. the French “-aire” in foreign words; e.g. акционе́рь. The plural is in -ы.

- ёръ, i.e. the French “-eur” in foreign words;
e.g. актёръ. The plural is in -ы.
- измъ = English “-ism.” This suffix is mostly
accented.
- истъ = English “-ist,” used in foreign words;
e.g. артистъ artist.
- лѳгія = English “-logy” in foreign words; e.g.
физіолѳгія physiology. Accented as shown.
- торъ, -соръ, in foreign words; the Latin “tor”;
e.g. авторъ author, профеѳсоръ professor. The
termination is unaccented; the plural in а
or ы.

II. Disused or dead suffixes.

- ѳба (dead). Nouns denoting action, mostly
derived from nouns; e.g. свѳдѳба wedding
(сватъ), друѳба friendship (другъ), судѳба
judgment (судъ). These words are mostly
paroxytone.
- ѳа unaccented (dead). Nouns denoting action of
verbs; e.g. брѳтва razor, клятѳва oath. These
words are generally paroxytone, unless derived
from verbs.
- мя (мени) neuter (dead). Suffix of a number of
nouns such as ѳмя name, пламя flame. Corre-
sponds to Latin “-men,” always dissyllabic
and paroxytone. [v. § 21.]
- ѳръ (dead). A termination found in a few Tatar
words; e.g. есаѳръ captain, караѳръ sentry.
- ѳѳ accented, masc. second declension (dead).
Names of agents; e.g. судѳѳ judge.

III. Patronymics.

-ичъ, in patronymics; feminine -ична. [v. § 83, I.]

-овичъ, -евичъ, in patronymics; feminine -овна,
-евна. [v. § 83, I.]

-овъ, -евъ, in patronymics; feminine -ова, -ева.
[v. § 83, I.]

IV. Termination to denote the female.

-а; e.g. раба́ (рабъ) slave.

-ева; e.g. коро́ль king, королева́.

-ица, forming feminines and nouns from verbs;
e.g. висѣ́ица gallows, племя́нница niece.

-ша (never accented), denotes the wife of an official;
e.g. фельдфе́рша the wife of a state messenger,
до́кторша the doctor's wife.

-ыня, -и́ня, feminine formation; e.g. геро́и́ня heroine,
кня́ги́ня countess, бо́ги́ня goddess,
суда́рыня, ба́рыня mistress.

V. Abstract nouns.

-знь fem. (dead), forms abstracts; e.g. бо́лѣзнь illness.

-и́зна (dead), forms abstracts; e.g. оте́чѣ́зна father-land,
новѣ́знá novelty.

-и́на, abstracts from adjectives; e.g. глѹ́би́нá depth,
годи́на time.

-ѣ́и́ня, -и́и́ня, forms abstracts from adjectives; e.g.
гори́и́ня pride.

-ie (unaccented), forms abstracts from adjectives ;
e.g. *весёлье* mirth.

-ость, -есть (never accented), forms abstract nouns
of the third declension from adjectives,
and retains accent of the adjective, unless it
is oxytone ; e.g. *скóрость*, *скóрый* quick ;
двѣжимость, *двѣжимый* moveable ; *на́гость*,
наго́й naked ; *свѣ́жесть*, *свѣ́жий* freshness.

-та́ forms abstract nouns from adjectives ; e.g.
быстрота́ speed, *красота́* beauty. Almost
always accented as shown.

-щина (never accented), forms abstract nouns from
nouns, descriptive of a state of affairs ;
e.g. *Обло́мовщина* Oblómovism (Oblómov, the
hero of a novel by Gončarov) ; *пугачёвщина*,
the state of rebellion induced by the rebel
Pugačov ; *Толсто́вщина*, Tolstoyan life.

-ство forms abstracts from adjectives and nouns.
One of the commonest terminations ; e.g.
лѣка́рство medicine, *товари́щество* society,
воровство́ thieving.

VI. Verbal nouns.

-и́ровка forms nouns of action from verbs in
-и́ровать ; e.g. *группи́ровка* the grouping,
марши́ровка the marching. Always thus
accented.

-ие (seldom accented), forming verbal nouns.
[v. § 42 (2) (i).] Note, however, -нѣ (*вра́нѣ*,
бранѣ).

-ие (very seldom accented), verbal noun. [v. § 49, II.]

VII. The agent or implement.

-акъ, -якъ, an agent; e.g. батра́къ workman, вожа́къ a leader. The accent is thrown forward in all the terminations. Always oxytone. [cf. § 25, I.]

-арь, -ярь, an agent, derives nouns from nouns; e.g. столя́рь joiner, боча́рь cooper. The plural is in -а́.

-арь, an agent; e.g. зна́харь magician, понама́рь sexton.

-ецъ, agent or implement; e.g. при́имецъ a receiver, ва́лецъ a roller, бо́рець a wrestler.

-икъ, an agent. The nominative is accented according to the noun from which the word is derived, when the word is oxytone the accent is thrown forward in the oblique cases; e.g. алхи́микъ alchemist, разска́зчикъ narrator, ямщи́къ coachman.

-ка (unaccented), an implement; e.g. винто́вка a rifle, во́зка carrying.

-никъ, an agent, derived from adjectives and nouns, v. -икъ; e.g. алты́нникъ a miser, бары́шникъ a jobber, возни́къ a draught horse. Feminine -ница. When -и́къ is accented it throws the accent forward on to all the terminations.

-тель, an agent, forms nouns from verbs; e.g. учи́тель teacher, писа́тель writer. The termination is never accented, the accentuation follows the infinitive. Sometimes the words have a secondary meaning, e.g. указа́тель index.

-ýнъ fem., -ýнъя (accented), depreciatory, agent from a verb ; e.g. болтýнъ, -ýнъя chatterbox, бѣгýнъ runaway.

-чикъ, -щикъ, an agent ; e.g. буфѣтчикъ a butler, ямщикъ a coachman, вальщикъ a paper-hanger.

VIII. Diminutives.*

(1) Masculine nouns of first declension.

-ѣкъ, -екъ, diminutive suffix for masculines ; e.g. кружѣкъ circle, кругъ.

-я (never accented), forms diminutives of proper names ; e.g. Пѣтя (Петръ), Кѣля (Николáй), Серѣжа (Сергѣй).

-ѣчекъ, -йчекъ, diminutive denoting affection for masculine nouns ; e.g. дружѣчекъ (другъ), кружѣчекъ (кругъ).

-йшко (masc. gen. -йшка, etc.), and -йшка, feminine (always thus accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from masculine nouns ; e.g. селѣшко (селѣ), ворѣшка (воръ thief, pick-pocket).

(2) Neuter nouns of first declension.

-ько (seldom accented), forms diminutive of neuter nouns ; e.g. крыльцѣ, крылѣчко ; *but* очкѣ.

-ьце, diminutive ; e.g. зѣркальце mirror.

* In Russian the use of diminutives and augmentatives is very common, the subtleties of meaning are difficult of translation into English, and can only be gathered by practice. It is important for the student to recognise the forms.

-ечко, -ышко, -ушко (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from neuter nouns; e.g. со́лнышко (солнце), гнѣ́здышко.

-ышко, -ишко, neut., and -ышка, -ишка, feminine, (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from nouns; e.g. селѣ́шко nasty little village, короты́шка pigmy, землі́шка barren piece of ground, городи́шко ugly little town.

(3) Feminines (and masculines) of the second declension.

-ька (unaccented), diminutive of feminines; e.g. жѣ́нка little woman; кнѣ́жка little book. This same termination forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. Са́шка (Александръ), Серѣ́жка (Серге́й).

-енька (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from the second declension; e.g. ду́шенька (душа́) little soul, darling.

-и́ца, -и́чка, forms diminutives of affection from feminine nouns; e.g. сестри́ца.

-очка, -чка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from second declension; e.g. скаме́ечка little stool, ка́рточка visiting card.

-ушка, -юшка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from nouns of second declension; e.g. ма́тушка (ма́ть) mother, ба́юшка (ба́тя) father.

-ёнка (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives; e.g. лоша́дёнка nasty little horse, корове́нка nasty little cow.

-ýша, -ю́ша, -ýшка, -ю́шка (always accented), forms diminutives of depreciation from nouns of the second declension; e.g. Катю́ша from Ка́тя Katy, Аксю́ша (from Акси́ня).

IX. Augmentatives.

-ище (masc. and neuter), -ища (feminine), forms augmentatives from nouns; e.g. домо́ище a big house (masc.); ду́рища a great fool (feminine); полотня́ище a big piece of cloth.

In some nouns there is no augmentative sense; e.g. жили́ище abode, кладби́ище cemetery (generally accented on the first syllable), учи́ище a school. When -ище is not an augmentative it is, as a rule, unaccented.

-ишо, -иша, forms augmentatives from nouns, generally depreciatory; e.g. домо́иша a very big house.

X. Miscellaneous.

-апи́нь, -яни́нь, mostly used to denote members of nations, religions, etc. [v. § 24 (5).] Accented either oxytone or paroxytone.

-а́чь, forms descriptive nouns; e.g. борода́чь a long beard, бога́чь a rich man.

-ёжъ (accented, disused), forms nouns from verbs; e.g. паде́жъ case (пада́тъ), грабе́жъ plunder (гра́бятъ); in the oblique cases падежа́, etc.

-ёнокъ, plural -ята, the young of animals; e.g. волчѣнокъ, волчята wolf; галчѣнокъ jackdaw; but щенокъ, щенята puppy; волчонокъ wolf's cub. [v. § 26 (5).]

-ло, from verbs; noun describes action of verb and follows accent of the past tense in лъ; e.g. нача́ло beginning, одѣ́ло blanket, вѣ́ло winnowing-fan, ва́ло chisel.

§ 99. ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES.

-авый (dead); e.g. лука́вый sly, велича́вый stately. Accented on termination -ав.

-ва́тый, a termination mainly used with adjectives denoting substance, generally accented -ва́тый; e.g. аляпо́ватый clumsy, ви́новатый guilty, витиева́тый eloquent.

-ова́тый, -ева́тый, added to adjectives, often has the sense of "-ish"; e.g. синева́тый bluish, бе́ловатый whitish. Always thus accented.

-ви́тый, descriptive adjective (from nouns); e.g. гранови́тый faceted, дарови́тый talented.

-и́кий, adjectival suffix; e.g. вели́кий big.

-истый, from nouns, "resemblance"; e.g. золоти́стый gold-coloured, гли́нистый clayey.

-и́ческий forms adjectives mostly from words derived from Greek; e.g. ари́метический arithmetical, практи́ческий practical. Accented as shown.

- ий (unaccented), forms possessive adjectives ; e.g. вороний a crow's. [v. § 35.]
- ливый forms adjectives from nouns ; e.g. счастливъ happy, стыдливый shamefast.
- мый, present passive participle, equivalent to “-ble.” [v. § 89, II.]
- ов-, -ев-, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts ; e.g. боковой lateral, Петровъ of Peter, Алексѣвъ of Alexis, верховой upper, тисовый of yew, вѣковой age-long.
- окій adjectival ending, -окъ substantive ; e.g. глубокий deep, знатокъ an expert, зрачокъ pupil of eye.
- онькій, -енькій, forms adjectives with diminutive meaning ; e.g. маленький very small, плохонькій unwell, тихонькій silent.
- учій, -ячій, former pres. part. act., now adjectival ; e.g. могучій powerful, горячій hot, зыбучій vacillating. [v. § 44.]
- чатый, forming descriptive adjectives ; e.g. колѣнчатый knotted, зубчатый notched. Accentuation follows that of principal noun.
- чивъ, forming adjectives ; e.g. задумчивый thoughtful, говорчивый talkative. The termination is unaccented.
- шій, adjectival from nouns ; e.g. домашній domestic, вчерашній yesterday's, теперешній of the present time.

-ѣскій, -ѣскою, forms adjectives of all sorts. There is no shortened predicative form. The accentuation is that of the noun from which the adjective is derived.

A few words accent -ѣскою; e.g. мужскою male, людскою public, городскою civic.

-льнѣй, -льною, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts; e.g. больноу ill, государственнѣй of the State, важнѣй important.

-инѣ, forms possessive adjectives in the second declension; e.g. дѣдинѣ the uncle's. [v. § 34 (2).]

-ѣйшѣй, -айшѣй, -ѣе, comparatives. [v. § 37.]

-янноу, -яною, adjectives of substance; e.g. водяноу watery, деревяннѣй wooden, масляноу buttery.

§ 100. VERBAL FORMATIONS.

-ѣровать (third conjugation), used mainly in foreign words; e.g. атрофѣровать to atrophy. [v. § 53 (3).]

-ѣть (fourth conjugation), forms transitive verbs; e.g. старѣть to make old, бѣсѣть to drive frantic. [v. § 59, V.]

-нуть, verbs of second conjugation. [v. § 50.]

-ѣвать, -ѣвать, iterative verbs. [v. § 59, I. (4).]

-ѣть (third conjugation), inceptive verbs; e.g. алѣть to grow red, краснѣть to blush. [v. § 53 (2).]

With roots ending in ч, ш, щ, the termination is -ать, v. § 55, II.

LONDON :
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

A SELECTION OF BOOKS ON ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

Published by JOHN MURRAY

At 50^A ALBEMARLE STREET, LONDON, W.

Complete Educational Catalogue post free on application.

*Two books suitable for "Local" and similar Examinations
In use in some hundreds of Schools.*

A NEW ENGLISH GRAMMAR

BY R. B. MORGAN, M.Litt.,

WHITGIFT GRAMMAR SCHOOL, CROYDON.

1s. 6d.

*The Recommendations of the Joint Committee on Gram-
matical Terminology have been employed throughout.*

"I think it is extremely good. What attracts me most is its simplicity."

"I find the book admirable."

ENGLISH COMPOSITION

BY E. E. KITCHENER, M.A.,

WHITGIFT GRAMMAR SCHOOL, CROYDON.

1s. 6d.

"This book will supply a distinct want, which has been felt in this school for some time."

"I have got valuable hints from the book myself, and find much excellent matter in it."

For Upper Forms and Advanced Students.

MATTER, FORM, AND STYLE

A MANUAL OF PRACTICE

IN THE WRITING OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION

BY HARDRESS O'GRADY. *2s.*

A School Manual of English Grammar. With Exercises and Examination Papers. By T. D. Hall, M.A. New Edition. Completely revised and brought up to date. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Primary English Grammar. With 134 Exercises and carefully graduated Parsing Lessons. By T. D. Hall, M.A. 14th Edition. 16mo. 1s.

The Teaching of Grammar. A Book for Teachers and Students, dealing with the scientific side of the subject. By Laura Brackenbury, M.A., Principal of the Clapham Training College. 2s.

A School Manual of English Composition. By Theophilus D. Hall, M.A. Cheaper Edition. 2s.

Essay Writing for Schools. By L. Cope Cornford. Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Introduction to Poetry. Poetic Expression, Poetic Truth, the Progress of Poetry. By Laurie Magnus, M.A. F'cap 8vo. 2s.

Shakspeare and his Predecessors in the English Drama. By F. S. Boas, M.A., sometime Professor of English Literature, Queen's College, Belfast. 6s.

The English Novel from its Origin to Sir Walter Scott. By Sir Walter Raleigh, M.A., Professor of English Literature in the University of Oxford. 2s.

The Jacobean Poets. By Edmund Gosse. 3s. 6d.

Outlines of English Literature. By William Renton. With Illustrative Diagrams. 3s. 6d.

Smaller History of English Literature Giving a Sketch of the Lives of our chief English Writers. By James Rowley. 15th Impression. Small Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

The Student's English Literature. A History of English Literature and of the chief English Writers founded upon the Manual of Thomas B. Shaw. By A. Hamilton Thomson, B.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge, and University Extension Lecturer in English Literature. With Notes, &c. A New Edition, thoroughly revised. 7s. 6d.

WORKS BY HENRY CECIL WYLD,

BAINES PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND
PHILOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LIVERPOOL.

A Short History of English. Crown 8vo. *6s. net.*

This work is intended for those who wish to make a serious scientific study of the subject upon the lines of modern philological method.

The Historical Study of the Mother Tongue.

An Introduction to Philological Method. *7s. 6d.*

The Growth of English. An Elementary Account of the Present Form of our Language and its Development. *3s. 6d.*

The Teaching of Reading in Training Colleges *2s.*

A practical guide for those who have to teach Primary Teachers in Training how to read their own language.

The Place of the Mother Tongue in National Education. Demy 8vo. *1s.*

WORKS BY ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A.

PROFESSOR OF FRENCH AND HEAD OF THE MODERN LANGUAGE
DEPARTMENT AT UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, NOTTINGHAM.

The Romance of Words. Large Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d. net.*

Observer.—"A book of extraordinary interest; everyone interested in words should immediately obtain a copy, and those who do not yet realize how enthralling a subject word-history is, could not do better than sample its flavour in Mr. Weekley's admirable book."

The Romance of Names. Large Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d. net.*

Athenæum.—"Professor Weekley is one of those rare teachers who know how to make learning interesting. We welcomed his book on 'The Romance of Words,' and we are equally glad to have its companion 'The Romance of Names,' which is at once entertaining and scholarly. It does not make the mistake of giving us too much."

MURRAY'S ENGLISH LITERATURE SERIES

BY E. W. EDMUNDS, M.A., B.Sc. (Lond.).

SENIOR ASSISTANT MASTER AT THE LUTON SECONDARY SCHOOL.

Press Opinions on the Series.

Athenæum.—"For inculcating an intelligent and lasting acquaintance with its subject the present series is likely, in our opinion, to prove the best of its kind."

Educational Times.—"The collection is excellent, and it will usefully extend the range of English reading in schools."

Secondary Education.—"We believe that this series will be found most useful to teachers."

THE STORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

Three Volumes. 3s. 6d. each.

VOL. I—The Elizabethan Period, 1558—1625.

VOL. II—Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries, 1625—1780.

VOL. III—Nineteenth Century, 1780—1880.

READINGS IN ENGLISH LITERATURE.

The three grades are designed to cover the whole period of school life. No class needs to use more than one book at a time

I—The Elizabethan Period, 1558—1625.

Junior Course, 2s. 6d. Intermediate Course, 2s. 6d.

Senior Course, 3s. 6d.

II—Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries, 1625—1780.

Junior Course, 2s. 6d. Intermediate Course, 2s. 6d.

Senior Course, 3s. 6d.

III—Nineteenth Century, 1780—1880.

Junior Course, 2s. 6d. Intermediate Course, 2s. 6d.

Senior Course, 3s. 6d.

JUNIOR COURSE—For Higher Elementary Schools, Preparatory Schools (Higher Forms), Lower Forms in Secondary Schools, and Evening Schools.

INTERMEDIATE COURSE—For Middle Forms of Secondary Schools, Pupil Teachers, and Higher Evening Schools.

SENIOR COURSE—For the Higher Forms of Secondary Schools, Teachers in Training, University Extension Students and University Undergraduates.

LONDON: JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

